

ترجمه کتاب:



4000

Essential

English

Words

با پاسخ تمرینات

منبعی عالی

برای واژگان

4

BeFluent.ir
Paul Nation



4000 Essential English Words 4

۴۰۰۰ کلمه ضروری
ترجمه جلد چهارم

تعداد صفحات: 342

(برای خرید و دانلود نسخه کامل به وبسایت ما مراجعه کنید)

www.befluent.ir

فایل‌های صوتی تلفظ کامل کتاب را از وبسایت دانلود کنید.

این کتاب توسط گروه befluent.ir ترجمه شده است و هر گونه کپی و انتشار آن در اینترنت مجاز نبوده و پیگرد قانونی خواهد داشت.



BeFluent.ir

معرفی کتاب:

تحقیقات نشان می‌دهد که در بیشتر مکالمات روزمره تنها از درصد کمی از کلمات هر زبان به صورت مکرر استفاده می‌شود. این واقعیت بیان‌گر این است که زبان‌آموزان با یادگیری این کلمات پرتکرار قادر خواهند بود که اکثر مکالمات را متوجه شده و در گام بعدی با تکرار و تسلط در استفاده از این کلمات، مهارت مکالمه خود را به صورت چشمگیری بهبود ببخشند.

سری کتاب‌های 4000 کلمه ضروری شامل 6 جلد است که در هر جلد بیشتر از 600 کلمه پرتکرار در مکالمه گنجانده شده است. در این مجموعه کلمات با توجه به میزان کاربردی بودن و تکرار آن‌ها در مکالمات و متون انتخاب شده‌اند. بنابراین با خواندن و یادگیری این کلمات مطمئن خواهید بود کلماتی که بیش از 90 درصد مکالمات انگلیسی را پوشش می‌دهند، را فرا گرفته‌اید. و از یادگیری کلماتی که ممکن است هیچوقت مورد استفاده شما قرار نگیرند، اجتناب می‌کنید. بنابراین این کلمات دارای مشخصه‌های زیر هستند:

- (1) هم در مکالمات و هم در نوشتاری بسیار کاربردی هستند.
- (2) پرتکرارترین کلمات هم در مکالمه و هم در نوشتاری هستند.
- (3) این مجموعه تقریباً 90 درصد کلمات استفاده شده در مکالمات انگلیسی، 80 درصد کلمات متون آکادمیک و 90 درصد کلمات داستان‌ها را شامل می‌شود.

نحوه آموزش کلمات:

جلد دوم شامل 30 درس و هر درس شامل 20 کلمه می‌باشد. تمامی کلمات، تعاریف، مثال‌ها و داستان‌ها دارای تلفظ با لهجه آمریکایی می‌باشند.

ابتدا خود کلمه و معنی فارسی آن آمده است. سپس تعریف کلمه به انگلیسی و بعد از آن یک مثال برای آن کلمه به همراه ترجمه فارسی قرار داده شده است. در انتهای هر درس یک داستان که در بر دارنده تمام کلمات آن درس است به همراه ترجمه قرار دارد. با خواندن این داستان هم معنی کلمات آن درس برای شما مرور خواهد شد و هم با نحوه استفاده و کاربرد آن کلمات در موقعیت‌های واقعی آشنا خواهید شد. همینطور هر درس شامل تمرین‌هایی برای یادگیری بهتر کلمات است. پاسخ این تمرین‌ها در انتهای کتاب آورده شده است.

برای هر کلمه یک عکس اختصاص داده شده است. این عکس‌ها مرتبط با مثال آن کلمه هستند. با دیدن این عکس‌ها شما در ذهن خود یک موقعیت مربوط به آن مثال را تصور خواهید کرد که در به خاطر سپردن آن کلمه تاثیر فوق‌العاده‌ای خواهد داشت.

همینطور حالت هر کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...) مشخص شده است. دقت کنید که ممکن است یک کلمه حالت‌های دیگری نیز داشته باشد، شما سعی کنید تمرکز خود را روی حالتی از کلمه قرار دهید که مد نظر کتاب است.

توضیح اجزای آموزشی هر کلمه:



8 v.

1 arise

7 [ə'raɪz]

2 به وجود آمدن، رخ دادن

3 To arise is to happen.

4 Difficulties arose with his computer because it was old.

5 برای کامپیوتر او مشکلاتی به وجود آمد، چون قدیمی بود.

(1 کلمه

(2 معنی فارسی کلمه

(3 تعریف انگلیسی کلمه

(4 مثال برای آن کلمه

(5 ترجمه مثال

(6 عکسی مرتبط با کلمه و مثال

(7 فونتیک (IPA) برای کلمه

(8 حالت کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...)

توضیح حالت‌های مختلف یک کلمه

v. = verb فعل

n. = noun اسم

adj. = adjective صفت

prep. = preposition حرف اضافه

pron. = pronoun ضمیر

conj. = conjunction حرف ربط

لیست دروس و کلمات (جلد چهارم)

Unit	Target Words	BeFluent.ir	Page
1	aroma, beverage, cluster, combine, condensed, contemporary, cultivate, divine, humid, odor, palate, paradise, plantation, rapid, rate, soothing, subtle, texture, toxic, vary		8
2	accident, admiral, arc, character, conscience, fiery, flesh, grapefruit, hay, horrified, kerosene, loop, paddle, raft, sour, stake, steward, string, thorn, wreck		14
3	admonish, audible, awesome, beware, brag, conscious, disagree, echo, eventual, hint, idiot, immense, indirect, option, pastime, perfect, pinpoint, switch, thorough, torment		20
4	beak, damp, disapprove, except, flight, fond, immoral, ivy, moan, oblivious, perish, pit, rim, roost, slippery, soar, trivial, typical, utterly, weep		26
5	awhile, cyberspace, edit, essay, evaluate, faint, global, gymnasium, highlight, ignorant, index, lecture, moral, operate, private, recent, resolution, semester, typewritten, weird		32
6	absolute, alas, attentive, cape, envision, evenly, folk, melt, patch, pleasure, pop, pudding, rail, recipe, role, shrink, soak, spark, spirit, suit		38
7	account, architect, conceal, crime, deed, gratitude, habitat, intervene, landmark, legal, memorable, oblige, offence, proclaim, rally, resolve, resource, sentence, volunteer, witness		44
8	access, conduct, constant, crack, device, enclose, grip, halt, impending, influence, law, mode, perspire, replace, snap, sly, tend, valid, version, whatsoever		50
9	alongside, appetite, assist, breeze, defy, display, efficient, feeble, forgive, lively, majestic, nor, outraged, pessimistic, rumor, slap, smash, subject, wage, whereas		56
10	animate, classify, concede, concept, construct, decade, diagram, ferry, handy, isolate, longing, numerous, particle, plea, refrain, review, sophisticated, surrender, upright, worthwhile		62
11	alliance, applause, armed, authoritative, ceremony, culture, defense, detail, diverse, enchant, equip, exception, genre, impact, lure, obstacle, shelter, sort, supply, vain		68
12	alternative, avenue, belly, bid, blow, conflict, continent, current, disrespect, enthusiasm, harsh, lean, meantime, mischief, muscle, rescue, succession, terrain, timid, violence		74
13	affect, autograph, bead, brew, charm, destiny, horn, irritable, lag, maximize, nightmare, nutritious, protein, signature, stuff, subconscious, van, warn, workout, zoom		80
14	brick, crumble, dough, express, fist, flexible, flush, injure, lump, mixture, reconcile, ruin, shatter, shutter, sift, slight, sparkle, sprinkle, stale, utter		86
15	although, apply, await, beloved, bury, climate, complain, confuse, due, entire, establish, furnace, leash, mature, measure, midst, misery, prior, research, variety		92

Unit	Target Words	BeFluent.ir	Page
16	altogether, bind, bruise, custom, disobedient, foresee, glimpse, hoop, misfortune, negative, per, plead, rip, sake, scrape, source, stern, stitch, thump, vehement		98
17	civilization, convenient, den, dew, drastic, exit, flock, fold, lid, loom, mighty, mushroom, native, poison, reed, shield, stormy, sway, urban, wade		104
18	accent, barber, basement, blank, blink, choir, comic, complicate, decline, errand, glove, hermit, justly, leather, ponder, reserve, script, search, slam, staircase		110
19	afflicted, aisle, atmosphere, author, breakdown, cargo, chapter, connect, etc., flip, idle, notify, pea, raisin, retain, state, tray, unfortunate, vivid, vomit		116
20	betray, blast, bracelet, cease, choke, civil, comment, cross, dent, distrust, fort, found, lining, mass, pray, rife, sole, sweep, treachery, tuck		122
21	background, bait, chronicle, copper, disease, folklore, infect, itch, literature, millennium, myth, promote, relate, religion, sum, teller, trustworthy, update, vein, venom		128
22	charity, commerce, condemn, cozy, deplete, economy, empire, goods, heed, hitchhike, mock, neutral, persecute, pity, reduce, scribe, temper, throne, unity, victor		134
23	accurate, analyze, asteroid, controversy, evolve, factor, genetic, genome, identical, intellectual, majority, mammal, multiply, offspring, pesticide, regulate, reinforce, stricken, vast, vegetarian		140
24	cherish, compassion, consent, core, cunning, dizzy, equilibrium, foster, grind, growl, moderation, predator, sane, saucer, snatch, stagger, stumble, tense, tumble, withhold		146
25	aircraft, celebrity, concrete, decisive, esteemed, ethical, extinct, hardy, institute, jealousy, migrate, nurture, overhead principle, rural, secluded, species, swamp, traverse, zoology		152
26	assumption, barley, beast, colonel, contagious, corpse, crisis, cure, deformed, discriminate, embassy, extinguish, flint, harass, integrate, miniature, nutrition, promptly, technician, tropics		158
27	beneficial, birthplace, capacity, comparative, comprehensive, conserve, crucial, cumulative, deposit, distribute, equator, exotic, federal, formation, frequency, objective, oxygen, rainforest, strategy, wooded		164
28	avail, expand, define, dread, fundamental, horrifying, incredulous, linger, organism, paraphrase, plague, presently, random, riot, scribble, shrine, solitude, stark, summon, worsen		170
29	automobile, candidate, confidential, corporate, enhance, era, guideline, incorporate, interact, interval, mobile, modify, parallel, phenomenon, pollute, ridicule, solar, territory, tournament, transportation		176
30	bill, boundary, chaos, consistent, cyclone, doomed, heir, martial, organic, poultry, scramble, sergeant, sheer, stance, telegraph, textile, tornado, typhoon, wail, wardrobe		182

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

- 1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.
- 2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.
- 3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

- 1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.
- 2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.
- 3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.
- 4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author Paul Nation

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



n.

aroma

[ə'rəʊmə]

عطر، بو، رایحه

❖ An aroma is a scent or smell.

➤ I love the aroma of coffee in the morning.

➤ من عاشق بوی قهوه در صبح هستم.

n.

beverage

['bevərɪdʒ]

نوشیدنی

❖ A beverage is a drink.

➤ The waiter brought our beverages first. Then he brought our food.

➤ گارسون اول نوشیدنی و سپس غذای ما را آورد.

n.

cluster

['klʌstə]

خوشه، دسته

❖ A cluster of things is a small group of them placed close together.

➤ She held a large cluster of grapes in her hand.

➤ او یک خوشه ی بزرگ انگور در دستش داشت.

v.

combine

[kəm'baɪn]

ترکیب کردن، مخلوط کردن

❖ To combine is to join together to make a single thing or group.

➤ Mina combined peanut butter and jelly to make a sandwich.

➤ مینا کره بادام زمینی و ژله را برای درست کردن ساندویچ با هم مخلوط کرد.

adj.

condensed

[kən'den(t)st]

فشرده، متراکم



- ❖ When a liquid is condensed, it is made thicker.
- One way to make a dessert thick and sweet is to use condensed milk.
- یکی از روش های سفت شدن و شیرین شدن ژله، استفاده از شیر فشرده می باشد.

adj.

contemporary

[kən'temp(ə)r(ə)rɪ]

معاصر، امروزی



- ❖ When something is contemporary, it is related to the present time.
- contemporary scientists have learned quite a bit about DNA.
- دانشمندان عصر حاضر در مورد دی ان ای اطلاعات بیشتری به دست آورده اند.

v.

cultivate

['kʌltɪveɪt]

کشت کردن، زراعت کردن



- ❖ To cultivate plants is to care for them and help them grow.
- A research company is cultivating new kinds of rice to aid poor countries.
- یک شرکت تحقیقاتی نوع جدیدی از برنج را برای کمک به کشور های فقیر، کشت می کند.

adj.

divine

[dɪ'vaɪn]

الهی، خدایی



- ❖ When something is divine, it is related to gods.
- Legends say that music was given to men as a divine gift from the gods.
- افسانه ها می گویند که موسیقی به عنوان یک هدیه ی الهی از سمت خداوند به انسان ها داده شده است.



adj.

humid

['hju:mɪd]

مرطوب، نمناک

- ❖ When it is humid, there is a lot of water in the air.
- It is very humid inside of a sauna.

➤ داخل سونا بسیار مرطوب است.



n.

odor

['əʊdə]

بو (معمولاً بوی بد)

- ❖ An odor is a very distinct smell.
 - He knew there was a leak when he noticed the strong odor of natural gas.
- زمانی که او متوجه بوی زیاد گاز طبیعی شد، متوجه وجود نشستی شد.



n.

palate

['pælət]

کام (دهان)، سقف دهان

- ❖ The palate is the top part of the mouth.
- You can touch your palate with your tongue.

➤ شما می توانید با زبان، سقف دهان خود را لمس کنید.



n.

paradise

['pærədəis]

بهشت

- ❖ paradise is the place or condition of happiness where things are perfect.
- My vacation in Hawaii was like being in paradise.

➤ تعطیلات من در هاوایی مانند زندگی در بهشت بود.

n.

plantation

[plæn'teɪ](ə)n]

مزرعه، کشتزار



- ❖ A plantation is a big farm that only grows certain kinds of crops.
- In the 1800s, there were many cotton plantations in the southern US.
- در سال 1800، مزارع پنبه‌ی بسیاری در آمریکای جنوبی بود.

adj.

rapid

['ræpɪd]

سریع، تند



- ❖ When something is rapid, it moves or changes very quickly.
- His mother was surprised by her son's rapid growth.
- مادر او با رشد سریع پسرش متعجب شد.

n.

rate

[reɪt]

میزان، نرخ



- ❖ A rate is the speed at which something happens.
- Grass tends to grow at a very slow rate.
- علف‌ها با سرعت بسیار کمی رشد می‌کنند.

adj.

soothing

['su:ðɪŋ]

تسلی بخش، آرام بخش



- ❖ When something is soothing, it makes you calm or relaxed.
- The soothing music helped the baby fall asleep.
- موسیقی آرامش‌بخش، در به خواب رفتن کودک کمک کرد.



adj.

subtle

['sʌtl]

نامحسوس، ظریف، لطیف



- ❖ When something is subtle, it is not easy to see or notice.
- The handsome man has a subtle smile.

➤ آن مرد جذاب، یک لبخند ظریف بر لب دارد.

n.

texture

['tekstʃə]

بافت، تار و پود



- ❖ The texture of something is the way its surface looks and feels.
- The texture of a rock found in the water is typically very smooth.

➤ ساختار صخره ی یافت شده در آب، بسیار نرم است.

adj.

toxic

['tɒksɪk]

سمی، زهرآلود



- ❖ When something is toxic, it is poisonous. toxic things are very dangerous.
- Please check the label to see if the product is toxic.

➤ برای مطمئن شدن از سمی نبودن محصول، لطفا برچسب را بررسی کنید.

v.

vary

['veəri]

فرق داشتن، متفاوت بودن



- ❖ To vary means to be different from another thing in size or amount.
- The heights of the people in my class vary by a large amount.

➤ قد افراد کلاس من بسیار متفاوت از یکدیگر است.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

- 1. rapid / rate**
The population growth in the city was incredibly _____. It is quite surprising that people settled there at such a fast _____.
- 2. contemporary / vary**
Many _____ laws make it illegal for business to compete in unfair ways. However, the specific laws in different countries _____ greatly.
- 3. humid / toxic**
Because it is quite _____ on the island, various kinds of plants grow well there. However, some of these plants are _____ to humans.
- 4. texture / aroma**
The cheese has a smooth _____. However, some people find it hard to eat because of its powerful _____.
- 5. cluster / combined**
A _____ of people suggested that nearby cities could fight the invaders if they cooperated with each other. As a result, everyone _____ their efforts and defeated the invaders.
- 6. soothing / subtle**
The artist uses _____ differences of color in her landscapes. This has an overall calming and _____ effect on the viewer.
- 7. cultivated / odor**
A huge garden was _____ in the middle of the city. However, a species of rare plants gave off an unpleasant _____.
- 8. beverage / palate**
During a four or five course meal, one should drink something to clean the _____ between courses. The perfect _____ for this is, of course, water.
- 9. condensed / divine**
I can explain the basic story in a simple, _____ way. A boy is given a _____ message, and he begins an exciting adventure.
- 10. plantations / paradise**
The island of Oahu is not a natural _____ like Maui. However, tourists still have plenty to enjoy on Oahu, from visits to pineapple _____ to traditional celebrations.

Exercise 2

1

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. A soothing cup of tea _____.
2. The odor of the cheese _____.
3. The pot's texture _____.
4. The chemical is toxic _____.
5. The contemporary fiction class _____.
6. The rate at which these flowers grew _____.
7. My mother cultivates _____.
8. The plantation had _____.
9. The thick and humid forest _____.
10. That cluster of stars in the sky makes _____.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| a. was surprisingly fast | b. includes work from the 21 st century |
| c. feels so smooth | d. covered almost a third of the country |
| e. was too strong to be enjoyable | f. several species of flowers as a hobby |
| g. to insects and small animals | h. twenty workers who grew cotton |
| i. is good for a sore throat | j. the shoulder of Taurus the Bull |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. The scientists wanted to find a cure for the sickness, _____.
2. He offered to share his water, _____.
3. I prefer mocha to coffee _____.
4. Many new jobs were created, _____.
5. The report was ten pages long, _____.
6. The doctor asked him to open his mouth, _____.
7. She walked in the door, _____.
8. Because the island is so warm and beautiful, _____.
9. Because patients' bodies are so different, _____.
10. It didn't rain all summer, _____.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| a. so economic growth was rapid | b. and Jim thought it was a divine message |
| c. people call it a paradise | d. the effects of the medicine will vary |
| e. and she looked at his palate | f. and she smelled the aroma of cookies |
| g. so they combined the chemicals | h. because it has a subtle taste of chocolate |
| i. but I wanted my own beverage | j. but the condensed version was shorter |

The History of Chocolate

Many people believe that chocolate originally came from Europe. However, chocolate, called the “food of the gods,” was first made in the Americas. The first chocolate was very different from **contemporary** chocolate.

Wild chocolate trees can grow easily in the **humid** Amazon rainforest. **Clusters** of flowers growing on these trees turn to seeds. About 20 to 60 cacao beans can be found in the seeds. Cacao beans are the ingredient needed to create sweet, **soothing**, and delicious chocolate treats.

The Mayan and Aztec cultures both thought that chocolate trees were brought from **paradise** by gods. The Mayans and Aztecs used the beans from this **divine** tree to create a special **beverage** with a very pleasant **odor**. Surprisingly, the Aztecs believed that it would be **toxic** to women and children.

In the 1500s, the Spanish explorer Cortes met the Aztecs. Cortes became quite interested in the **plantations** where the Aztecs **cultivated** chocolate trees. When he returned to Europe, he took cacao beans with him. He introduced the people of Spain to the Aztecs’ chocolate beverage.

Over the next 100 years or so, kings, queens, and members of the upper class enjoyed drinking chocolate. They enjoyed it even more once they learned to add sugar to the beverage! Soon, chocolate had spread all across Europe. New machines allowed chocolate makers to perfect their products and produce them at a very **rapid rate**. Preparing the beans in special ways brought out the **aroma** of chocolate. The beans were **combined** with **condensed** milk to give the chocolate a smooth **texture**.

Today, contemporary chocolates with **subtle** flavors fill the shelves of expensive chocolate shops. The different types of chocolate available today **vary** widely. True chocolate lovers can tell which is best, though. They will tell you that the flavor of high quality chocolate stays on the **palate** long after you finish it.



تاریخچه شکلات

بسیاری از مردم معتقدند که شکلات در اصل از اروپا آمده است. با این حال، شکلات که "غذای خدایان" نامیده می‌شد، اولین بار در آمریکا ساخته شد. اولین شکلات ساخته شده نسبت به شکلات‌های امروزی بسیار متفاوت بود.

درختان شکلات وحشی می‌توانند به راحتی در جنگل‌های بارانی مرطوب آمازون رشد کنند. خوشه‌های گل در این درختان به دانه تبدیل می‌شوند. در هر دانه می‌توان 20 تا 60 عدد دانه کاکائو یافت. دانه‌های کاکائو برای ایجاد شکلات شیرین و خوشمزه و آرامش بخش مورد نیاز هستند.

فرهنگ‌های مایایی و آزتک هر دو فکر می‌کردند که خدایان درختان شکلات را از بهشت آورده بودند. مایاها و آزتک‌ها از این درخت الهی برای ایجاد یک نوشیدنی خاص با بویی دلپذیر استفاده می‌کردند. به طور شگفت‌انگیزی، آزتک‌ها اعتقاد داشتند که این نوشیدنی برای زنان و کودکان سمی خواهد بود.

در دهه 1950، کاشف اسپانیایی کورتس با آزتک‌ها آشنا شد. کورتس به کشتزارهایی که آزتک‌ها در آن درخت شکلات کاشته بودند علاقه‌مند شد. وقتی به اروپا بازگشت، با خود دانه‌های شکلات را نیز به اروپا برد. او مردم اسپانیا را با نوشیدنی شکلاتی آزتک‌ها آشنا کرد.

طی سال‌های پس از آن، پادشاهان، ملکه‌ها و اعضای طبقه بالا از خوردن شکلات لذت می‌بردند و حتی زمانی که یاد گرفتند به این نوشیدنی خوشمزه شکر اضافه کنند این لذت بیشتر هم شد. به زودی شکلات در سراسر اروپا پخش شد. ماشین‌های جدید به سازندگان امکان داد تا محصولات خود را کامل کنند و با سرعت بسیار بالایی آن‌ها را تولید و عرضه نمایند.

آماده کردن دانه‌ها به روش‌های خاص، رایحه خوش شکلات را نمایان کرد. دانه‌ها با شیر غلیظ مخلوط می‌شدند تا به شکلات یک بافت نرم بدهد.

امروزه شکلات‌های مدرن با طعم‌های ملایم قفسه‌های فروشگاه‌های گران قیمت شکلات را پر می‌کند. انواع مختلف شکلات موجود، امروزه بسیار متفاوت هستند. با این حال، دوستداران واقعی شکلات می‌توانند بگویند که کدام یک بهتر است. آنها به شما خواهند گفت که طعم شکلات با کیفیت بالا مدت‌ها پس از اتمام آن روی زبان می‌ماند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

- Wild chocolate trees grow well in humid weather.

- The Mayans and Aztecs said chocolate was a divine plant brought from paradise.

- The Mayans cultivated chocolate trees on plantations.

- Beans were combined with condensed milk to give chocolate a smooth texture.

- The first chocolate beverages were made in Europe.

- The different types of chocolate available today vary widely.

PART B Answer the questions.

- Which word is NOT used to describe chocolate in the reading?
 - Aroma
 - Delicious
 - Soothing
 - Sweet
- Which of the following did NOT consume chocolate as a beverage?
 - Cortes
 - Europeans in the 1500s
 - Mayan gods
 - The Aztecs
- Which group of people believed that chocolate was toxic to women and children?
 - Chocolate makers
 - Plantation owners
 - The upper class in Europe
 - The Aztecs
- What allowed chocolate to be produced at a rapid rate?
 - Cortes of Spain
 - Cacao beans
 - New machines
 - Kings and queens



n.

accident

['æksɪd(ə)nt]

تصادف



- ❖ An accident is an unexpected undesirable event.
- She had to go to the hospital after she was in a serious car accident.
- بعد از یک تصادف شدید، او باید به بیمارستان می رفت.

n.

admiral

['ædm(ə)rəl]

دریاسالار، فرمانده کشتی



- ❖ An admiral is someone who controls many military ships.
- They won the sea battle because of the admiral's great leadership.
- به دلیل رهبری عالی دریاسالار، آن ها در جنگ دریایی پیروز شدند.

n.

arc

[ɑ:k]

منحنی، کمان



- ❖ An arc is a curved shape.
- A rainbow has the shape of an arc.
- رنگین کمان به شکل یک منحنی می باشد.

n.

character

['kærəktə]

شخصیت، کاراکتر



- ❖ Your character is your personality.
- My sister's character is fun and very outgoing.
- شخصیت خواهر من بسیار شوخ و اجتماعی می باشد.



n.

conscience ['kɒn(t)](ə)n(t)s]

وجدان

- ❖ Your conscience is your inner sense of what is right and wrong.
- I recycle everything I can, so my conscience is clear!

➤ من هرچیزی را که بتوانم بازیافت می کنم، به همین دلیل وجدانم آسوده است.



adj.

fiery ['faɪəri]

آتشین، سوزان

- ❖ If something is fiery, it is burning strongly.
- The fiery blaze burned all night long.

➤ شعله های آتشین در تمام شب می سوخت.



n.

flesh [fleʃ]

گوشت، جسم، پوست

- ❖ flesh is the skin, muscle and fat on your body.
- The zebra's flesh has black and white stripes.

➤ بدن گورخر راه راه های سیاه و سفید دارد.



n.

grapefruit ['greɪpfru:t]

گریپ فروت

- ❖ A grapefruit is a fruit similar to an orange, but bigger and not as sweet.
- Would you like a grapefruit with your breakfast?

➤ دوست داری با صبحانه ات گریپ فروت بخوری؟



n.

hay

[heɪ]

یونجه، علف خشک



- ❖ hay is dry grass used to feed animals or used as a covering.
- I need to buy some more hay for the horse to sleep on.
- بعد از استراحت، باید برای اسب علوفه ی بیشتری بخرم.

n.

horrified

['hɒrɪfaɪd]

هراسان، وحشت زده



- ❖ If you are horrified, you are shocked and feel upset.
- I was horrified when I read about the old lady who was attacked.
- وقتی در مورد حمله به زن میانسال خواندم، وحشت زده شدم.

n.

kerosene

['kerəsi:n]

نفت



- ❖ kerosene is a type of oil. It used in some lamps and stoves.
- Many people in poor countries cook on kerosene stoves.
- در بسیاری از کشورهای فقیر، مردم برای پخت و پز از اجاق نفتی استفاده می کنند.

n.

loop

[lu:p]

حلقه



- ❖ A loop is a line made into shape of a circle.
- He made a loop with the rope and placed it over the post.
- او یک حلقه با طناب ساخت و آن را روی دیرک انداخت.

n.

paddle

['pædl]

پارو، پدال



- ❖ A paddle is a piece of wood or plastic that moves a boat across water.
- We need a paddle to help us move across the water.

➤ برای عبور از آب به پارو نیاز داریم.

n.

raft

[ra:ft]

کلهک، قایق



- ❖ A raft is a floating platform made from pieces of wood tied together.
- The man made a raft out of bamboo and floated out to sea.

➤ آن مرد با بامبو ها یک کلهک ساخت و روی دریا شناور شد.

adj.

sour

['sauə]

ترش



- ❖ When something is sour, it has a sharp and unpleasant taste.
- I don't like lemons because I think they are too sour.

➤ من لیمو دوست ندارم، چون ترش است.

n.

stake

[steɪk]

تیر چوبی، تیرچه



- ❖ A stake is a small, sharp piece of wood or metal that is put into the ground.
- We marked our property by placing stakes into the ground.

➤ با قرار دادن تیرچوبی بر روی زمین، محدوده ی ملک خود را مشخص کردیم.



n.

steward

['stju:əd]

مهماندار (کشتی، هواپیما و ...)



- ❖ A steward is a person like a waiter who serves food on planes and ships.
- The steward is bringing some tea.

➤ مهماندار مقداری چای می آورد.

n.

string

[strɪŋ]

نخ، طناب، ریسمان



- ❖ string is a thin piece of fabric or rope.
- I found a large ball of string.

➤ من یک توپ بزرگ نخ پیدا کردم.

n.

thorn

[θɔ:n]

خار



- ❖ A thorn is a sharp part of a plant.
- Be careful of the thorns when you pick the roses!

➤ وقتی که رز می چینید مراقب خارهای آن باشید.

v.

wreck

[rek]

ویران کردن، نابود کردن



- ❖ To wreck something means to destroy or ruin it.
- The teenagers wrecked the house for no reason at all.

➤ نوجوانان بدون هیچ دلیلی، خانه را نابود کردند.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. thorn
a. a sharp part on a plant
b. a captain on a ship
c. someone who serves food
d. a piece of wood that moves a boat
2. arc
a. a thin rope
b. a part of your mind
c. a circle in a rope
d. a curved shape
3. raft
a. a waiter
b. an undesirable event
c. on fire
d. a floating platform
4. hay
a. oil
b. dry grass
c. a piece of wood in the ground
d. a fruit
5. character
a. where something is bought
b. personality
c. difficulties
d. skin and muscle

PART B Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. a piece of wood in the ground
a. admiral
b. flesh
c. stake
d. loop
2. frightened
a. wrecked
b. horrified
c. fiery
d. sour
3. a curved shape
a. arc
b. hay
c. kerosene
d. string
4. part of your mind that stops you from doing bad things
a. character
b. conscience
c. accident
d. steward
5. something you use to move a boat
a. thorn
b. raft
c. grapefruit
d. paddle

Exercise 2

2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Tom was promoted, and now he is an important sea officer that controls military ships.

2. Some people thought that the meal was too sharp and unpleasant tasting.

3. The oil in lamps and stoves is a very cheap form of heat.

4. Why did you steal the woman's bag? Don't you have a mind that understands what is wrong?

5. Can you buy three yellow pieces of fruit that are like oranges from the supermarket please?

6. I hope that the waiter on the plane will bring some water soon.

7. After lightning struck the tree, the forest turned into a burning blaze.

8. Use this thin rope to tie the package.

9. I cleaned the rabbit's cage and left some dry grass for it to eat.

10. I threw the ball through the line in the shape of a circle.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

Word Bank

character

accident

flesh

stake

wreck

1. I'm going to tie the cow to a _____ in the ground.
2. You shouldn't eat the chicken. The _____ is still pink.
3. New drivers are more likely to _____ their cars than experienced drivers.
4. Many people were hurt in the boating _____.
5. My brother has a very friendly and cheerful _____.

Monkey Island

In the middle of the ocean, there is a small island shaped like an **arc**. Here, monkeys play on the beach and in the trees. But how did the monkeys get there?

Once, an English **admiral** was exploring Africa when he found hundreds of monkeys. The admiral's **character** was mean. He thought, "I could sell these monkeys and become very rich! I'm going to take them to England."

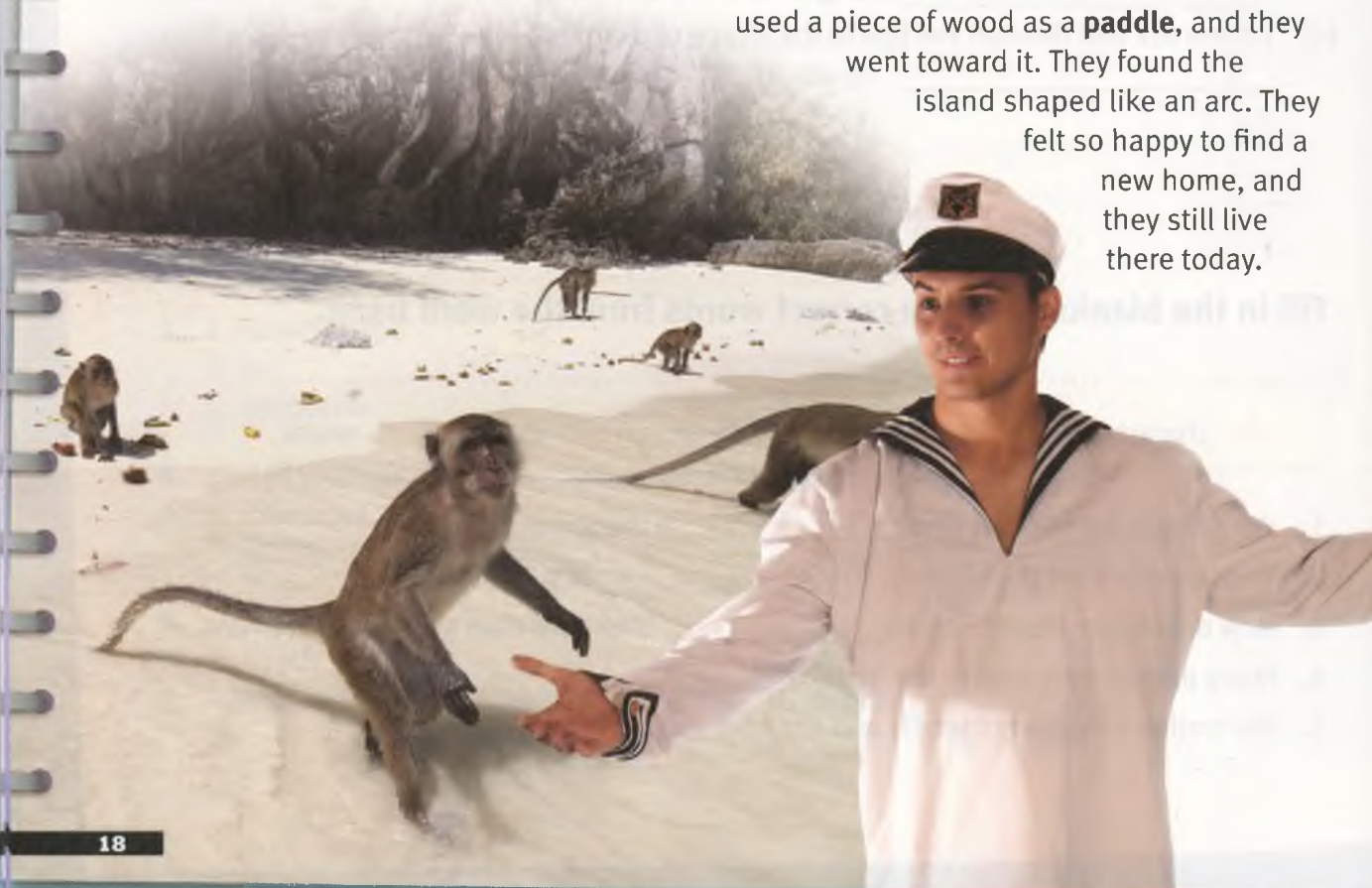
So the admiral set traps to catch the monkeys. He put **stakes** in the ground, tied **string** around them and made **loops** in the string. When the monkeys ran through the forest, their feet got caught in the loops, and they couldn't escape. Then the admiral put the monkeys in cages on his ship and sailed away.

The cages were small and uncomfortable. There was no soft **hay** for the monkeys to sleep on. Instead, they slept on branches with sharp **thorns** that cut into the monkeys' **flesh**. For dinner, he gave them tiny pieces of **sour grapefruit** to eat. The monkeys grew hungry and weak.

But one day, the admiral hired a new **steward**. He was a kind man with a good **conscience**. He was **horrified** to see the thin monkeys in the cages. So one night he let them out.

The monkeys ran and played all over the ship! They attacked the admiral and the steward and ate their food. They completely **wrecked** the ship. One monkey ran into a **kerosene** lamp, and it fell over. The ship caught fire and began to sink! The whole crew was lost except for the monkeys.

After the **accident**, the monkeys jumped onto a **raft**. They floated away from the **fiery** blaze of the ship. In the morning, they saw a little island in the distance. The monkeys used a piece of wood as a **paddle**, and they went toward it. They found the island shaped like an arc. They felt so happy to find a new home, and they still live there today.



جزیره میمون‌ها

در وسط اقیانوس، یک جزیره کوچک شبیه یک کمان وجود دارد. در اینجا میمون‌ها در ساحل و لابلای درختان بازی می‌کنند. اما این میمون‌ها چطور به آنجا رسیده‌اند؟

یک‌بار یک دریاسالار انگلیسی در حال اکتشاف افریقا بود که صدها میمون پیدا کرد.

دریاسالار شخصیت بدجنسی داشت. او فکر می‌کرد: " من می‌توانم این میمون‌ها را بفروشم و بسیار ثروتمند شوم! من می‌خواهم آن‌ها را به انگلستان ببرم. " بنابراین دریاسالار دام‌هایی را برای گرفتن میمون‌ها تدارک دید. او چندین تیر چوبی را در زمین فرو کرد و ریسمان‌هایی را به دور آن‌ها بست و حلقه‌های ریسمان را درهم کشید. وقتی میمون‌ها از جنگل گذشتند، پاهایشان در حلقه گیر کرد و نتوانستند فرار کنند. بعد دریاسالار میمون‌ها را درون قفسی روی عرشه کشتی گذاشت و به راه افتاد.

قفس‌ها کوچک و تنگ بودند. هیچ علف نرمی برای میمون‌ها نبود که روی آن بخوابند. در عوض، آن‌ها روی شاخه‌هایی با خارهای تیزی که گوشت میمون‌ها را می‌برید، خوابیدند. برای صرف شام تکه‌های کوچکی از گریپ‌فروت ترش را برای خوردن به آن‌ها داد. میمون‌ها گرسنه و ضعیف شدند.

اما یک روز، دریاسالار یک خدمتکار جدید استخدام کرد. او مردی مهربان و با وجدان بود و از دیدن میمون‌ها در قفس وحشت کرد. بنابراین یک شب آن‌ها را بیرون آورد.

میمون‌ها دویدند و در تمام طول کشتی بازی کردند! آن‌ها به دریاسالار و خدمتکار حمله کردند و غذایشان را خوردند و کشتی را کاملاً نابود کردند. یک میمون به سمت یک چراغ‌نفتی دوید و سقوط کرد و بدین ترتیب کشتی آتش گرفت و شروع به غرق شدن کرد! همه خدمه به جز میمون‌ها گم شده بودند.

بعد از این حادثه، میمون‌ها به روی کلک پریدند و از شعله‌های آتشین کشتی دور شدند. صبح، آن‌ها جزیره کوچکی را در دوردست دیدند. میمون‌ها از یک تکه چوب به عنوان پارو استفاده کردند و به طرف آن جزیره رفتند. آن‌ها جزیره را مانند کمانی در وسط اقیانوس یافتند و خیلی خوشحال بودند که یک خانه جدید پیدا کرده‌اند. آن‌ها هنوز هم آنجا در همان جزیره زندگی می‌کنند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The admiral thought that selling the monkeys would make him rich.

2. ___ The admiral caught the monkeys using loops of string and stakes.

3. ___ The admiral put hay in the monkeys' cages.

4. ___ The steward had no conscience.

5. ___ The admiral was horrified because the monkeys were muscular.

6. ___ The monkeys jumped on a raft after the accident.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which adjective describes the admiral's character?

- a. Generous
- b. Mean
- c. Sour
- d. Fiery

2. Where did the admiral plan to take the monkeys?

- a. To the wrecked ship
- b. To England
- c. To an island
- d. To Africa

3. What did the monkeys eat while they were in the cages?

- a. Thorns
- b. Hay
- c. Grapefruit
- d. Flesh

4. What shape was the island that the monkeys found?

- a. A paddle
- b. An arc
- c. A circle
- d. A rope

v.

admonish

[əd'mɒnɪʃ]

تذکر دادن، بر حذر داشتن



- ❖ To admonish someone is to tell them you disapprove of their behavior.
- The teacher admonished Mark because he was chewing gum in class.
- معلم به مارک تذکر داد، چرا که او در کلاس آدامس می جوید.

adj.

audible

['ɔːdəbl̩]

قابل شنیدن، رسا



- ❖ If something is audible, then it is able to be heard.
- The sound of the drums was audible from miles away.
- صدای طبل ها از دوردست ها به گوش می رسید.

adj.

awesome

['ɔːsəm]

فوق العاده، محشر



- ❖ If something or someone is awesome, they are impressive or frightening.
- The huge military plane was an awesome sight.
- هواپیمای عظیم نظامی یک منظره عالی بود.

v.

beware

[bi'weə]

مواظب بودن، مراقب بودن



- ❖ To beware means to be careful of something or someone that is dangerous.
- You should beware of driving fast on wet roads.
- باید مراقب سرعت رانندگی در جاده های مرطوب باشید.

v.

brag

[bræg]

پز دادن، قبی آمدن



- ❖ To brag means to talk of one's abilities or achievements in a proud way.
- He had strong muscles and bragged about it to the entire class.
- او عضلات محکمی داشت و در مورد آن به کل کلاس پز می داد.

adj.

conscious

['kɒn(t)ʃəs]

هوشیار، آگاه



- ❖ If someone is conscious of something, then they are aware of it.
- The new student was conscious of the other students staring at her.
- دانش آموز جدید نسبت به دانش آموزان دیگر که به او خیره شده بودند، آگاهی داشت.

v.

disagree

[,dɪsə'gri:]

مخالفت کردن



- ❖ To disagree with someone means to have a different opinion from them.
- The lawyer disagreed about the best way to settle the case.
- وکیل در مورد بهترین راه حل این پرونده اختلاف نظر داشت.

v.

echo

['ekəʊ]

پیچیدن، منعکس کردن



- ❖ To echo means that a sound repeats itself because it bounced off an object.
- The child yelled over the canyon, and the wall echoed the sound.
- کودک بر فراز رودخانه فریاد زد و دیوار صدا را منعکس کرد.

adj.

eventual

[i'ventʃuəl]

نهایی



- ❖ If something is eventual, it will happen at the end of a series of events.
- The constant training and planning led the team to an eventual victory.
- تمرین و برنامه ریزی مداوم تیم را به پیروزی نهایی رساند.

n.

hint

[hɪnt]

اشاره، راهنمایی، نکته



- ❖ A hint is information that suggests something will happen or is true.
- I quietly passed on a hint to my sister about the test.
- من بی سر و صدا در مورد آزمون خواهرم را راهنمایی کردم.

n.

idiot

[ɪ'diɒt]

احمق



- ❖ An idiot is a person who is not smart or who has done something silly.
- Because he got lost in the forest, the man felt like an idiot.
- به دلیل اینکه در جنگل گم شد، مرد احساس حماقت کرد.

adj.

immense

[ɪ'men(t)s]

عظیم، وسیع، بسیار زیاد



- ❖ If something is immense, it is very large.
- An immense amount of money was needed to buy such a large boat.
- برای خرید چنین قایق بزرگی به پول زیادی نیاز بود.

adj.

indirect

[ˌɪndɪ'rekt]

غیرمستقیم



- ❖ If something is indirect, then it is not the easiest or straightest way.
- He chose to take the most indirect route to the coast.
- او تصمیم گرفت غیر مستقیم ترین مسیر را به سمت ساحل طی کند.

n.

option

[ˈɒpʃ(ə)n]

گزینه، انتخاب



- ❖ An option is a choice between two or more things.
- The children were given the option of three houses to pick from.
- به بچه ها سه خانه پیشنهاد شد تا یکی از آن ها را انتخاب کنند.

n.

pastime

[ˈpɑːstaim]

سرگرمی



- ❖ A pastime is an activity done for fun that you do often.
- In the US, baseball is considered the national pastime.
- در ایالات متحده، بیس بال سرگرمی ملی محسوب می شود.

adj.

perfect

[ˈpɜːfɪkt]

عالی، بی نقص، کامل



- ❖ If something is perfect, then it is without any mistakes.
- She got all the questions right, so her score was perfect.
- او به تمامی سوال ها درست پاسخ داد، بنابراین نمره اش عالی شد.

v.

pinpoint

['pɪnpɔɪnt]

با دقت مشخص کردن



- ❖ To pinpoint something means to locate it exactly.
- The navigation system in my car is able to pinpoint my exact location.
- سیستم ناوبری اتومبیل من قادر است مکان دقیق من را مشخص کند.

v.

switch

[swɪtʃ]

تغییر دادن، عوض کردن



- ❖ To switch means to change something to something else.
- Mom switched the TV station from the news to her favorite show.
- مادر، شبکه تلویزیون را از خبر به نمایش مورد علاقه ی خود تغییر داد.

adj.

thorough

['θʌrə]

تمام و کمال، کامل، جامع



- ❖ If something or someone is thorough, then they are complete in every way.
- Tina did a thorough job of cleaning the stains out of the carpet.
- تینا لکه های فرش را کاملا تمیز کرد.

v.

torment

[tɔ:'ment]

اذیت کردن، آزار دادن



- ❖ To torment someone means to cause them to suffer on purpose.
- She tormented her little brother by taking his favorite toy.
- او با گرفتن اسباب بازی مورد علاقه اش، برادر کوچک خود را آزار داد.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. idiot / option

I had the _____ of going with them or staying home. I felt like an _____ for the choice I made.

2. admonished / torment

Because he liked to _____ the kitten by pouring water on it, the boy's mother _____ him for his cruel behavior.

3. echoed / pinpoint

It was difficult to _____ the dog's location because its cries _____ off of the hills.

4. brag / perfect

My sister likes to _____ about how my mother and father think her behavior is _____.

5. beware / switch

When you _____ the machine on, you need to _____ because the machine is dangerous.

6. eventual / pastime

All of the accidents at the swimming pool led to the _____ closing of it and the end of a favorite summer _____.

7. disagreed / awesome

The king wanted people to think that his power was _____. He would put people in jail if they _____ with him.

8. audible / conscious

Even though the little girl was trying to sneak up on her parents, her _____ steps made her parents _____ of her.

9. immense / indirect

An _____ tree fell across the road, forcing the travelers to take a more _____ route through the countryside.

10. hint / thorough

The police could not find a single clue to the crime, which gave a _____ as to how _____ the thief had been.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. You should **beware** _____.
2. My favorite **pastime** _____.
3. The doctor did a **thorough** check _____.
4. The two friends **disagreed** _____.
5. She **switched** the bag _____.
6. His proud sister **brags** _____.
7. An **immense** pile of garbage _____.
8. The **indirect** route _____.
9. The **awesome** storm caused _____.
10. She **admonished** the student _____.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| a. about which game was better | b. of the hole in the bridge |
| c. for talking during the test | d. was the reason for the bad smell |
| e. about how good she is at sports | f. of the sick man's health |
| g. took an hour more to drive | h. fear that his home would be damaged |
| i. from her left hand to her right | j. is listening to music |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. He couldn't sleep at night _____.
2. We knew he broke his leg when he fell _____.
3. He had to choose the blue car _____.
4. The hiker always carried a compass and map, _____.
5. She didn't eat good food and didn't exercise, _____.
6. The students had to answer all the questions correctly _____.
7. The captain did not see the ship approaching behind him, _____.
8. She thought someone was calling to her from the other cliff, _____.
9. He knew his friends were having a surprise party for him _____.
10. If you can't tie your own shoes by the time you're twelve years old _____.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a. and it led to her eventual illness | b. because they gave him so many hints |
| c. if they wanted to get a perfect grade | d. but he was conscious of the other boats |
| e. because bad dreams tormented him | f. then people might think you're an idiot |
| g. but it was just the echo of her voice | h. because there weren't any other options |
| i. so he could pinpoint his location in the wild | |
| j. because the sound of the bone breaking was audible | |

The Young Man and the Old Man

A proud young man was looking for a new **pastime**. He heard about people hiking in the national parks and decided to try it for himself. As he started his stroll, an old man walked up to him.

“Don’t go this way,” the old man said. “**Beware**. The paths are not clear. It’s easy to become lost.”

But the young man **disagreed** with the old man and **bragged** that he had a **perfect** understanding of the park. “I studied maps of this area,” he told him. “I believe I have a **thorough** knowledge of these trails. I won’t become lost.”

The old man listened to the young man and then **admonished** him for his pride.

“I have walked these trails my entire life,” he said. “If you think you will be safe, then go ahead.”

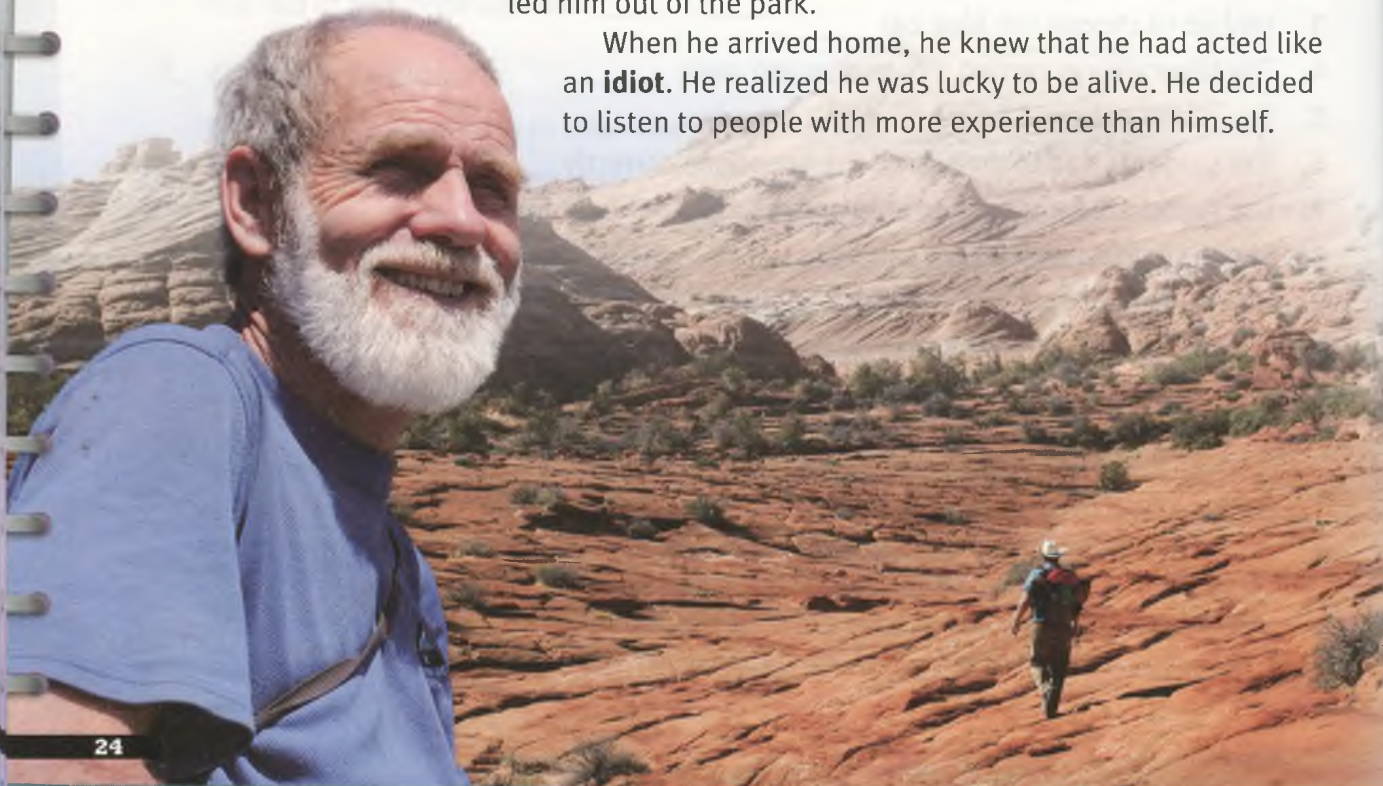
The young man ignored the old man and started along the trail.

Whenever he had to choose between an easy or difficult route, he always chose the more difficult **option**. In addition, he was not **conscious** of which direction he was going. After a while, he decided to return home. Because his course through the wilderness was so **indirect**, he had no idea where he was.

He looked at his map but could not **pinpoint** his location. He walked one path after another but soon realized he was lost.

The sun was going down, and sudden strong winds gave a **hint** that it might rain. **Immense** clouds filled the sky. **Awesome** sounds of thunder were **audible** from all directions. It **echoed** off the mountains. The thought of the **eventual** storm **tormented** the young man. He hurried in one direction, but soon **switched** out of confusion. Luckily, it led him out of the park.

When he arrived home, he knew that he had acted like an **idiot**. He realized he was lucky to be alive. He decided to listen to people with more experience than himself.



پیرمرد و جوان

جوانی مغرور به دنبال سرگرمی جدیدی می‌گشت. او شنیده بود که مردم در پارک ملی پیاده‌روی می‌کنند و بنابراین تصمیم گرفت این سرگرمی را برای خودش امتحان کند. وقتی سفرش را آغاز کرد، پیرمردی به سویش آمد. پیرمرد گفت: "از این طرف نرو. مراقب باش. مسیرها روشن نیستند. گم شدن اینجا آسان است."

اما مرد جوان با پیرمرد مخالفت کرد و به خود می‌بالید که درک کاملی از پارک دارد. او به پیرمرد گفت: "من نقشه‌های این ناحیه را مطالعه کرده‌ام و معتقدم که دانش عمیقی از این مسیرها دارم. من گم نخواهم شد."

پیرمرد به مرد جوان گوش داد و سپس او را به این خاطر سرزنش کرد. او گفت: "من تمام عمرم را پیاده روی کرده‌ام. اگر فکر می‌کنی که این مسیر ایمن خواهد بود، به راحت ادامه بده."

مرد جوان پیرمرد را نادیده گرفت و در امتداد مسیر حرکت کرد. هر زمان که او مجبور بود بین یک مسیر آسان و مشکل انتخاب کند، همیشه گزینه دشوارتر را انتخاب می‌کرد. علاوه بر این، او آگاه نبود که دارد به کدام جهت می‌رود.

پس از مدتی تصمیم گرفت به خانه باز گردد. زیرا راه او در بیابان آن قدر غیر مستقیم بود که نمی‌دانست کجاست.

به نقشه نگاه کرد اما نتوانست موقعیتش را روی نقشه نشانه گذاری کند. تو راه‌ها را یکی پس از دیگری می‌پیمود، اما طولی نکشید که فهمید گم شده‌است.

خورشید غروب می‌کرد و بادهای شدید ناگهانی، سرنخی بود از اینکه قرار است باران ببارد. ابرهای عظیم آسمان را پر کردند. صدای فوق العاده رعد از همه طرف شنیده می‌شد و در کوه می‌پیچید. فکر طوفان احتمالی این جوان را آزار می‌داد. او با عجله به یک طرف رفت، اما خیلی زود از سردرگمی درآمد. خوشبختانه، این مسئله او را از پارک خارج کرد.

وقتی به خانه رسید می‌دانست که مانند یک ابله عمل کرده‌است. فهمید که شانس آورده که هنوز زنده است. او تصمیم گرفت که به مردم باتجربه، بیشتر گوش دهد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The young man decided to hike in the national parks.

2. ___ The young man disagreed with the old man.

3. ___ The young man believed that his knowledge of the park's trails was thorough.

4. ___ When the young man had an option of two trails, he always chose the easier one.

5. ___ The young man was tormented by the thought of the eventual storm.

6. ___ When the young man got home, he knew that the old man had acted like an idiot.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What did the young man choose as his new pastime?
 - a. Picking trails
 - b. Climbing mountains
 - c. Talking with old men
 - d. Hiking in parks
2. Why did the old man admonish the young man?
 - a. The young man was awesome.
 - b. The young man bragged that he was perfect.
 - c. The young man's route was too indirect.
 - d. The young man chose difficult trails.
3. Why did the young man become lost?
 - a. He was not conscious of where he went.
 - b. He pinpointed his location on his map.
 - c. He did not switch to an easier trail.
 - d. He listened to the old man's advice.
4. Which of the following gave a hint of an eventual storm?
 - a. The sudden strong winds
 - b. The sparse clouds in the sky
 - c. The weather getting colder
 - d. The lightning flashing in the sky



n.

beak

[bi:k]

نوک، منقار



- ❖ A beak is the hard curved part of a bird's mouth.
- The bird used her beak to dig a small hole in the ground.
- پرنده از منقار خود برای کندن گودالی در زمین استفاده کرد.

adj.

damp

[dæmp]

مرطوب، نمناک



- ❖ If something is damp, it is somewhat wet.
- My hair is still damp from my shower.
- موهای من بعد از دوش گرفتن هنوز مرطوب است.

v.

disapprove

[ˌdɪsə'pru:v]

رد کردن، تایید نکردن



- ❖ To disapprove of something is to think that it is wrong.
- Alex disapproved of his son's behavior.
- الکس مخالف رفتار پسرش بود.

prep.

except

[ɪk'sept]

به جز، به غیر از



- ❖ You use except to talk about the only thing that a statement does not apply to.
- Everyone had fun on the trip except Jim, who felt ill the whole time.
- به جز جیم که بیمار بود، به همه در سفر خوش گذشت.



n.

flight

[flaɪt]

پرواز



- ❖ A flight is an act of flying, often in an airplane.
- The airplane made a flight around the world.

➤ هواپیما در سراسر جهان پرواز کرد.

adj.

fond

[fɒnd]

علاقه‌مند، دوست‌دار



- ❖ When someone is fond of something, they like it.
- I am very fond of chocolate cake.

➤ من به کیک شکلاتی بسیار علاقه دارم.

adj.

immoral

[ɪ'mɔr(ə)l]

غیر اخلاقی



- ❖ When something or someone is immoral, they are evil or do bad things.
- Stealing money from one's mother is an immoral act.

➤ دزدیدن پول از مادر، یک کار غیر اخلاقی است.

n.

ivy

['aɪvɪ]

پیچک



- ❖ ivy is a plant with long vines that grows upward typically on walls.
- The walls of the castle are covered with ivy.

➤ دیوارهای قصر پوشیده از پیچک است.

v.

moan

[məʊn]

نالاه کردن، زاری کردن

- ❖ To moan is to make a low sound when feeling pain or sadness.
- The sick man moaned from his bed.

➤ مرد بیمار در تختش ناله می کرد.

adj.

oblivious

[ə'blɪvɪəs]

بی توجه، فراموشکار

- ❖ If someone is oblivious of something, they are unaware of it.
- I was late to school because I was oblivious of the time.

➤ من دیر به مدرسه رسیدم، چرا که به ساعت بی اعتنا بودم.

v.

perish

['perɪʃ]

مردن، هلاک شدن، به هلاکت رسیدن

- ❖ To perish means to die, usually because of bad conditions or bad events.
- Many people perish in wars.

➤ بسیاری از مردم در جنگ می میرند.

n.

pit

[pɪt]

چاله، گودال، حفره

- ❖ A pit is a big hole in the ground.
- Michael fell into the pit and needed some help to get out.
- مایکل به چاله افتاد و برای بیرون آمدن به کمک نیاز داشت.

n.

rim

[rɪm]



لبه، حاشیه، دیواره

- ❖ The rim is the outside edge of a round thing, like a cup or bottle.
- I put my lips to the rim of the bottle and took a drink.
- لب هایم را در لبه ی بطری قرار دادم و نوشیدنی خوردم.

n.

roost

[ru:st]



لانه

- ❖ A roost is a place where birds can land and rest or sleep.
- The family of doves made a roost at the top of the tree.
- قمری ها لانه ای در بالای درخت ساختند.

adj.

slippery

['slɪp(ə)rɪ]



لغزنده، لیز، لغزان

- ❖ If something is slippery, it is wet or smooth and causes people to slip.
- The repairman fell down on the floor because it was too slippery.
- به دلیل سر بودن، تعمیرکار به زمین افتاد.

v.

soar

[sɔ:]



اوج گرفتن، بالا رفتن

- ❖ To soar means to fly high in the air.
- As the sun rose, two eagles soared through the sky.
- هنگام طلوع آفتاب، دو عقاب در آسمان اوج گرفتند.

adj.

trivial

['trɪviəl]

جزئی، کم‌اهمیت



- ❖ If something is trivial, it is not important or meaningful.
- Television is trivial, but learning to read is very important.
- دیدن تلویزیون مهم نیست، اما یادگیری خواندن مهم است.

n.

typical

['tɪpɪk(ə)l]

کلیشه‌ای، معمول، عادی



- ❖ If something is typical, it is normal for a certain type of thing.
- Barking is typical behavior for dogs.
- پارس کردن یک رفتار عادی در سگ‌هاست.

adv.

utterly

['ʌtəli]

کاملاً، مطلقاً



- ❖ If something is utterly a way, it is completely that way.
- When the sun was blocked by the moon, it was utterly dark outside.
- وقتی که ماه جلوی خورشید را گرفت، بیرون تاریکی مطلق بود.

v.

weep

[wi:p]

اشک ریختن، گریه کردن



- ❖ To weep means to cry.
- My sister told me the dramatic movie would make me weep.
- خواهرم به من گفت که فیلم‌های درام باعث می‌شوند گریه کنم.

Exercise 1

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. What does a sad movie cause people to do?
 - a. To weep
 - b. To except
 - c. To perish
 - d. To disapprove
2. Where would a bird build a home?
 - a. On a rim
 - b. In a pit
 - c. On a roost
 - d. On a flight
3. Which word best describes a wet towel?
 - a. Immoral
 - b. Damp
 - c. Trivial
 - d. Fond
4. What does it mean to fly?
 - a. To soar
 - b. To moan
 - c. To be oblivious
 - d. To be typical
5. Which word would best describe a smooth, wet stone?
 - a. Ivy
 - b. Utterly
 - c. Slippery
 - d. Immoral
6. Which word describes something that would have a rim?
 - a. A thought
 - b. A cup
 - c. A person
 - d. A smell
7. Which word describes something that has a beak?
 - a. A bird
 - b. A boat
 - c. A car
 - d. A lion
8. What is typical about fish?
 - a. They can swim.
 - b. One type can sing.
 - c. They can live on land.
 - d. Some can live for close to 50 years.
9. Which of these people would most likely be moaning?
 - a. A doctor
 - b. A happy boy
 - c. A wife
 - d. A hurt woman
10. Which person has been proven to have committed an immoral act?
 - a. A teacher
 - b. A criminal
 - c. A judge
 - d. A fireman

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. oblivious / perish

All of the people in the movie will _____ if they remain _____ of the monster.

2. roost / fond

When the owl wants to make a _____, it is _____ of using an empty barn.

3. pit / rim

He grabbed the can by its _____, then tossed it far down into the _____.

4. flight / soars

The eagle _____ into the clouds when it goes on a long _____.

5. moan / weep

Every time the sick woman would _____ in pain, her daughter would _____.

6. immoral / typical

It is not _____ for a policeman to do _____ things like stealing.

7. beak / except

Every part of the bird was beautiful, _____ for its short, ugly _____.

8. trivial / disapprove

Because his assistant is teaching them _____ plays, the coach will _____ of the time wasted.

9. utterly / ivy

Because it _____ covered the fence, the gardener had to remove all of the _____.

10. slippery / damp

The ground became dangerous and _____ because everyone placed their _____ towels there.

The Tricky Fox

There was a fox that lived in the forest. Fox loved to play mean tricks on the other animals. One day, he used the sharp **rim** of a bottle to dig a **pit** in the ground. He hid in a tree until Rabbit came to the pit's edge. Then, he jumped out and pushed Rabbit into the pit. Fox laughed and ran away. The angry Rabbit climbed out and told the other animals what happened.

The others said, "That is **typical** behavior for Fox. He does mean things all the time. Sometimes, he is completely **immoral**. We all **disapprove** of his actions, so we should teach him a lesson. Tomorrow, we'll push Fox into that pit."

The next day, all of the animals hid near the pit and waited for Fox. Fox was **oblivious** to the hidden animals. He walked up to the pit to see if Rabbit was still trapped. Just then, the other animals ran up to Fox and pushed him in. All the animals laughed and cheered, **except** Fox, of course.

Fox couldn't get out! The walls of the pit were covered in **damp ivy**. It was too **slippery** for him to climb out. He was **utterly** helpless. He **moaned** and began to **weep**.

At last, he saw Eagle watching him from her **roost**. He yelled, "Eagle, please help me! If I don't get out of here, I will **perish!**"

Eagle said, "You may think your tricks are **trivial**, but you hurt others when you do mean things. I'll help you if you promise to be nice."

Fox said, "I promise!"

Eagle began her **flight** to the bottom of the pit. She picked up Fox with her **beak** and **soared** out of the pit. She dropped Fox safely on the ground.

Fox thanked Eagle and kept his promise. He was nice to the other animals. The animals even became **fond** of Fox, and the forest was a happy place.



روباه مکار

روباهی بود که در جنگل زندگی می‌کرد. روباه دوست داشت تا به حیوانات دیگر کلک بزند. یک روز او از لبه تیز یک بطری برای حفر گودالی در زمین استفاده کرد. او در تنه یک درخت پنهان شد تا آنکه خرگوش به لبه گودال رسید. سپس بیرون پرید و خرگوش را به درون گودال هل داد. روباه خندید و فرار کرد. خرگوش هم با عصبانیت بالا رفت و به حیوانات دیگر گفت که چه اتفاقی افتاده است.

دیگران گفتند: " این رفتاری معمولی برای روباه است. او همیشه کارهای خبیثانه می‌کند. گاهی کارهای او کاملاً غیراخلاقی است. همه ما مخالف اقدامات او هستیم، بنابراین باید درسی به او بدهیم. فردا، ما روباه را به درون آن گودال هل خواهیم داد. " روباه نسبت به حیواناتی که پنهان شده بودند غافل بود. او به سوی گودال رفت تا ببیند آیا خرگوش هنوز در دام افتاده است یا نه. درست در همین موقع حیوانات دیگر به طرف روباه دویدند و او را به داخل گودال هل دادند. همه حیوانات خندیدند و هورا کشیدند، البته بجز روباه!

روباه نتوانست بیرون برود زیرا دیوارهای گودال با پیچک مرطوب پوشیده شده بود و آن قدر لغزنده بود که نمی‌شد از آن بالا رفت. سخت درمانده شده بود. ناله می‌کرد و به گریه افتاده بود.

سرانجام عقاب را دید که روباه را از لانه اش تماشا می‌کرد. فریاد زد: " عقاب، لطفاً کمک کن! اگر از اینجا نروم، نابود می‌شوم! عقاب گفت: " تو ممکن است فکر کنی که حقه‌هایت جزئی و کم اهمیت‌اند، اما وقتی آنها را با دیگران انجام می‌دهی به دیگران آسیب می‌رسانی. من به تو کمک می‌کنم به شرطی که قول بدهی روباه خوبی باشی. "

روباه گفت: " قول می‌دهم. "

عقاب پرواز خود را به ته گودال آغاز کرد. با منقارش روباه را برداشت و از حفره بالا رفت. او روباه را به سلامت روی زمین انداخت.

روباه از عقاب تشکر کرد و به قولش هم عمل کرد. از آن پس روباه با حیوانات جنگل مهربان بود و حیوانات نیز به او افتخار می‌کردند و جنگل دوباره مکانی شاد و مفرح برای همه حیوانات شد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Fox used the rim of a bottle to dig a deep pit.

2. ___ Fox had a roost near the pit.

3. ___ The damp ivy was too slippery for Fox to climb out.

4. ___ Immoral and mean behavior was typical with Fox.

5. ___ Fox was oblivious to the hidden pit.

6. ___ Eagle flew into the pit to save Fox.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. How did Rabbit fall into the pit?

- a. Rabbit ran into the pit.
- b. Fox pushed him into the pit.
- c. Rabbit sat on the edge.
- d. Fox laughed and ran away.

2. Why did Fox thank Eagle?

- a. She gave him money.
- b. She became fond of Fox.
- c. She did not let Fox perish.
- d. She gave Fox some rope to climb out.

3. Why did Fox moan and weep?

- a. The animals taught him a lesson.
- b. He saw Eagle in her roost.
- c. He felt trivial.
- d. He felt utterly helpless.

4. What happened after Eagle's flight to the bottom of the pit?

- a. She disapproved of Fox.
- b. She got stuck in the pit.
- c. She made Fox promise to leave the forest.
- d. She picked up Fox with her beak.

adv.

awhile

[ə'waɪl]

برای مدتی، یک چندی، اندک زمانی

- ❖ If you do something awhile, you do it for a short time.
- Wait here awhile, and I'll bring some tea.

➤ مدتی اینجا صبرکن، تا مقداری چای بیاورم.

n.

cyberspace

['saɪbəspeɪs]

فضای مجازی

- ❖ cyberspace is the imaginary place of the internet where activities occur.
- I didn't receive your email. It probably got lost in cyberspace.

➤ من ایمیل تو را دریافت نکردم، احتمالا در فضای مجازی گم شده است.

v.

edit

['edit]

ویرایش کردن، تدوین کردن

- ❖ To edit means to correct a piece of writing so that it is suitable to be published.
- She asked her brother to edit her paper before she submitted it to her teacher.

➤ او از برادرش خواست که قبل از تحویل مقاله اش به استاد آن را ویرایش ویرایش کند.

n.

essay

['eseɪ]

مقاله، انشا

- ❖ An essay is a short piece of writing on a certain subject.
- She had to write a two-page essay for her English class.

➤ او باید یک مقاله ی دو صفحه ای برای کلاس انگلیسی خود می نوشت.

v.

evaluate

[i'væljueɪt]

ارزیابی کردن، ارزشیابی کردن، سنجیدن



- ❖ To evaluate something means to study it, so a decision can be made.
- Joe and Ken evaluated the plan and agreed that it would work.
- جو و کن برنامه را ارزیابی کردند و در مورد کارکرد آن به توافق رسیدند.

v.

faint

[feɪnt]

از حال رفتن، غش کردن



- ❖ To faint means to go unconscious and fall down.
- Carol fainted because she hadn't eaten in over a day.
- به دلیل این که کارول در طول روز چیزی نخورده بود از حال رفت.

adj.

global

['gləʊb(ə)l]

جهانی



- ❖ If something is global, it happens all around the world.
- Pollution is a global problem.
- آلودگی یک مشکل جهانیست.

n.

gymnasium

[dʒɪm'neɪzɪəm]

سالن ورزش، باشگاه ورزش



- ❖ A gymnasium is a building with equipment that you can use to get exercise.
- When I go to the gymnasium, I use the treadmill for 20 minutes.
- وقتی که به باشگاه می روم، 20 دقیقه روی تردمیل راه می روم.

v.

highlight

['haɪlaɪt]

برجسته کردن، مشخص کردن



- ❖ To highlight something means to mark it with a color so that it is easy to see.
- I read my vocabulary list and highlighted the most difficult words.
- من لیست واژگان را خواندم و لغات سخت را مشخص کردم.

adj.

ignorant

['ɪgn(ə)r(ə)nt]

نادان، ناآگاه، بی اطلاع



- ❖ If someone is ignorant about something, they have no knowledge about it.
- I'm a bit ignorant about his theories. Can you explain them to me?
- من در مورد نظریه های او اطلاعی ندارم. میشه برام آن ها را توضیح دهید؟

n.

index

['ɪndeks]

فهرست مطالب



- ❖ An index is a list of words at the end of a book that gives information.
- If you look in the index, you'll find the right page number.
- اگر به فهرست مطالب نگاه کنید، شماره صفحه ی درست را پیدا می کنید.

n.

lecture

['lektʃə]

سخنرانی، ارائه



- ❖ A lecture is a long, educational speech.
- His lecture on world hunger was very informative.
- مقاله ی او در مورد گرسنگی جهان دارای اطلاعات بسیاری بود.

n.

moral

['mɔr(ə)]

نکته اخلاقی، اصول اخلاقی



- ❖ A moral is a message at the end of a story that teaches you something.
- At the end of the story, Mother explained the moral to the children.
- در پایان داستان، مادر نکته ی اخلاقی را به فرزندش گفت.

v.

operate

['ɔp(ə)reit]

کار کردن، عمل کردن



- ❖ To operate means to work or function.
- I'm sorry, but the trains are not operating today.
- متاسفم، اما امروز قطار حرکت نمی کند.

adj.

private

['praɪvɪt]

خصوصی، شخصی



- ❖ If something is private, it is only used by one person or group.
- Don't look at my diary! It's private!
- دفترخواهرات من را برندار، خصوصی است.

adj.

recent

['ri:s(ə)nt]

اخیر، تازه، جدید



- ❖ When something is recent, it happened a short time ago.
- I did not know what caused his recent behavior.
- من علت رفتار اخیر او را نمی دانستم.



n.

resolution

[,rez(ə)'lu:ʃ(ə)n]

قصد، تصمیم



❖ A resolution is a personal decision.

➤ At New Year, I made a list of resolutions to help me have a better year.

➤ در سال جدید، لیستی از تصمیمات خود تهیه کردم تا برای داشتن سالی بهتر به من کمک کند.

n.

semester

[sɪ'mestə]

نیمسال، ترم



❖ A semester is a portion of a school year.

➤ Jack is in his second semester of college.

➤ جک در نیمسال دوم کالج می باشد.

adj.

typewritten

['taɪp,rɪt(ə)n]

تایپ شده



❖ If something is typewritten, it is written on a computer or typewriter.

➤ This is an important, formal project and must be typewritten.

➤ این یک پروژه ی مهم و رسمی می باشد و باید تایپ شود.

adj.

weird

[wɪəd]

عجیب، غریب



❖ When something is weird, it is very strange.

➤ My best friend's dad is a bit weird.

➤ بهترین دوست پدرم کمی عجیب است.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. cyberspace / operate

If you know how to _____ a computer, you can get access to _____.

2. recent / global

A _____ study shows that _____ hunger is a very big problem.

3. weird / ignorant

My mom is completely _____ about computers. She thinks that email and chat rooms are _____ ways to spend one's time.

4. essays / edit

Joe has the ability to write great _____. His writing is so good that he never has to _____ his work.

5. semester / index

The report is due at the end of the _____. You should look in the _____ to see if this book will help you with the report.

6. fainted / lecture

Our teacher _____ while she was giving us a _____ about health!

7. highlighted / typewritten

Jennifer's notes are very neat! They are _____, and she has _____ the most important parts with a green pen.

8. gymnasium / resolution

I made a _____ to go to the _____ more often to improve my health.

9. moral / awhile

The _____ of the story is that you should think _____ before saying anything that might hurt someone.

10. evaluated / private

We _____ the company, and our suggestions are written in this _____ document.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. The team **evaluated** _____.
2. The **moral** of the story is _____.
3. The **global** economic problems _____.
4. Joe **operates** _____.
5. We went to a **lecture** _____.
6. The friends you meet in **cyberspace** _____.
7. The **weird** kid at school _____.
8. You should **highlight** these words _____.
9. I made a **resolution** _____.
10. The end of the first **semester** _____.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| a. are getting worse | b. aren't as important as real friends |
| c. about birds | d. is halfway through the school year |
| e. to be nicer to people | f. to eat less chocolate |
| g. the success of the project | h. with a yellow pen |
| i. this large machine | j. ate soup with a knife |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. I wanted to get fit _____.
2. Geology is my favorite subject, _____.
3. My paper was full of mistakes, _____.
4. My brother couldn't help me with my math homework _____.
5. In the first aid class, we learned what to do _____.
6. I wanted to find some information about volcanoes, _____.
7. That copy of the text book is too old, _____.
8. I need a computer _____.
9. I'll get some tea if _____.
10. You mustn't tell anyone this information; _____.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. it's private | b. so I looked under "V" in the index |
| c. but he helped me edit it | d. you wait here awhile |
| e. so I went to the gymnasium | f. so you should find a more recent one |
| g. so I wrote an essay about rocks | h. because my essay has to be typewritten |
| i. if someone faints | j. because he's ignorant about math |

The Magic Computer

I had a difficult geography project to finish by the end of the **semester**. My teacher wanted it to be **typewritten**, so I went to the school computer room. But when I got there, all the computers were turned off. Apparently there was a **recent** problem, and technicians were fixing it.

I knew of some **private** study rooms downstairs. They were small and dark, and the computers were very old, but I had no choice. At least the computers were **operating** correctly. I typed and **highlighted** the assignment's title: "**Evaluate** the Government's Response to **Global Warming**." But I didn't know what to write in my **essay**. Finally I decided to find a book to help me. I went to the library, checked the book **indexes** and eventually found a useful book. Then I returned to the computer.

When I looked at the screen, I saw something so **weird** that I nearly **fainted!** The essay was complete! Had somebody in **cyberspace** written it? I didn't know, but I was very happy. I printed it out and handed it in. I got an "A."

After that, I used the computer for all my assignments. I'd type the title, wait **awhile**, and the computer would do it. Every assignment was perfect; I never had to **edit** anything. I stopped paying attention to my teacher's **lectures** and spent my extra time in the **gymnasium**. And my grades got better and better.

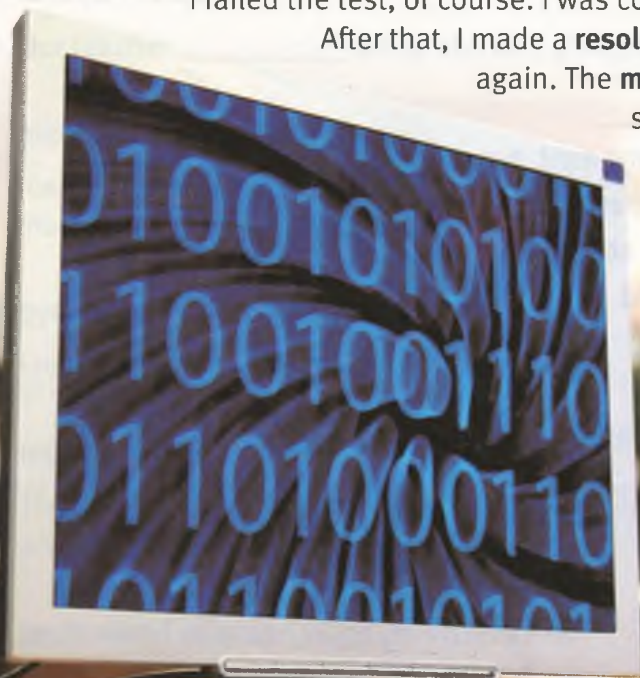
A month later, I was walking into class when my friend said, "Are you prepared for the test?"

"What test?" I asked.

"The geography test!" he replied. "I hope you studied. It's worth seventy percent of our final grade!"

I failed the test, of course. I was completely **ignorant** about the subject.

After that, I made a **resolution** never to use the magic computer again. The **moral** of this story is that if you cheat at school, you won't learn anything.



کامپیوتر جادویی

من یک پروژه جغرافی سخت داشتم که باید تا پایان ترم به اتمام می‌رسید. معلم از من خواسته بود که پروژه تایپ شده باشد، بنابراین به اتاق کامپیوتر رفتم. اما وقتی آنجا رسیدم، همه کامپیوترها خاموش بود. ظاهراً مشکل جدیدی وجود داشت و تکنسین‌ها در حال تعمیر آن بودند.

از تعدادی اتاق مطالعه خصوصی در طبقه پایین خبر داشتم. آن‌ها کوچک و تاریک بودند، و کامپیوترها خیلی قدیمی بودند، اما هیچ انتخابی نداشتم. دست‌کم کامپیوترها به درستی کار می‌کردند. تایپ کردم و عنوان تکلیف را برجسته کردم: "واکنش دولت به گرم شدن جهانی هوای کره زمین را ارزیابی کنید" اما نمی‌دانستم در مقاله خود چه بنویسم. بالاخره تصمیم گرفتم کتابی پیدا کنم که به من کمک کند. به کتابخانه رفتم، فهرست کتابها را بررسی کردم و در نهایت کتاب مفیدی پیدا کردم. بعد به سراغ کامپیوتر برگشتم.

وقتی به صفحه مانیتور نگاه کردم، چیز عجیبی دیدم که نزدیک بود غش کنم. مقاله کامل بود! کسی در فضای مجازی نوشته بود؟ نمی‌دانستم، اما خیلی خوشحال بودم. من آن مقاله را چاپ کردم و به معلم تحویل دادم و نمره عالی گرفتم. بعد از آن، من از کامپیوتر برای انجام تمام تکالیف خود استفاده می‌کردم. من عنوان را تایپ کرده، مدتی صبر می‌کردم، و کامپیوتر بقیه کار را برای من انجام می‌داد. همه چیز عالی بود؛ هرگز مجبور نبودم هیچ چیزی را ویرایش کنم. من توجه به سخنرانی‌های معلم را متوقف کردم و وقت اضافی خود را در سالن ژیمناستیک گذراندم.

در حالی که نمرات من بهتر و بهتر می‌شد. یک ماه بعد، داشتم وارد کلاس می‌شدم که دوستم گفت، "آیا برای امتحان آماده‌ای؟" پرسیدم: "چه امتحانی؟"

او پاسخ داد: "امتحان جغرافیا! امیدوارم مطالعه کرده باشی زیرا هفتاد درصد از نمره نهایی درس جغرافی را همین امتحان تعیین می‌کند."

من در این آزمون موفق نشدم. در مورد این موضوع کاملاً بی‌اطلاع بودم.

بعد از آن، من تصمیم گرفتم که دیگر از کامپیوتر جادویی استفاده نکنم. نکته اخلاقی این داستان این است که اگر شما در مدرسه تقلب کنید، چیزی یاد نخواهید گرفت.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The computers were turned off because there was a recent problem.

2. ___ The private study rooms were upstairs.

3. ___ The computers in the private study rooms weren't operating correctly.

4. ___ In his project, the student had to evaluate the government's response to global warming.

5. ___ The geography test was worth fifty percent of the final grade.

6. ___ The student failed the test because he was completely ignorant about the subject.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. How did the teacher want the project to be written?
 - a. In first person
 - b. Handwritten
 - c. Typewritten
 - d. In black ink
2. What was the project about?
 - a. Global warming
 - b. Economics
 - c. Weird computers
 - d. Computer science
3. What did the student NOT have to do in order to use the magic computer?
 - a. Type in the essay title
 - b. Edit his paper
 - c. Plug it in
 - d. Wait awhile
4. Where did the student spend his free time?
 - a. In lectures
 - b. In the gymnasium
 - c. In the library
 - d. In cyberspace



adj.

absolute

[ˌæbs(ə)'l(j)u:t]

مطلق، کامل، محض

- ❖ If something is absolute, it is total or complete.
- My presentation was an absolute disaster! It was terrible!
- ارائه ی من یک فاجعه ی کامل بود، وحشتناک بود.



n

alas

[ə'læs]

افسوس، آه

- ❖ alas is a word that people say when something bad happens.
- I looked everywhere for my purse, but alas, I couldn't find it.
- همه جا به دنبال کیفم گشتم، اما پیدايش نکردم.



adj.

attentive

[ə'tentiv]

بادقت، مراقب

- ❖ If you are attentive, you are careful and you pay attention.
- He is a good student because he is attentive to every detail on his work.
- او یک دانش آموز خوب است، چرا که به تمام جزئیات در کار خود دقت می کند.



n.

cape

[keɪp]

شنل

- ❖ A cape is a large cloth that covers one's back and is tied around the neck.
- The superhero wore a long red cape.
- سوپر قهرمان یک شنل بلند قرمز پوشیده بود.

v.

envision

[in'vɪz(ə)n]

تجسم کردن، تصور کردن



- ❖ To envision something means to imagine that it may happen.
- I can envision my mom's face when I give her this present!
- صورت مادرم را وقتی که هدیه را به او می دهم، تصور کردم.

adv.

evenly

['i:v(ə)nli]

به طور مساوی، به طرز یکسان



- ❖ When something happens evenly, it happens at the same rate of level.
- The food was handed out evenly among the hungry people.
- غذا در میان افراد گرسنه به طور یکسان داده شد.

n.

folk

[fəuk]

مردم، مردمان



- ❖ folk are common or average people.
- I've invited all the folks from our street to a gathering at my place.
- تمام مردم خیابان محل زندگی خود را برای گردهمایی در خانه ام دعوت کردم.

v.

melt

[melt]

ذوب شدن، آب شدن



- ❖ To melt means to turn from a solid to a liquid.
- The snowman that we made yesterday melted in the sun.
- آدم برفی که دیروز ساخته بودیم در برابر نور خورشید آب شد.

n.

patch

[pætʃ]

قطعه، زمین



- ❖ A patch is a part of a surface that is different in appearance from the rest.
- There was one small patch of grass in the sand-covered desert.
- در بیابان پوشیده از شن، تکه ی کوچکی از علف وجود داشت.

n.

pleasure

['pleɪzə]

لذت، دلخوشی



- ❖ pleasure is a feeling of happiness.
- The student smiled with pleasure when she received the prize.
- دانش آموز هنگام دریافت جایزه با لذت لبخند زد.

n.

pop

[pɒp]

صدای تق، صدای ترکیدن



- ❖ A pop is a short, loud sound.
- I heard a loud pop; then my computer screen shattered.
- صدای تق بلندی شنیدم، سپس صفحه نمایش رایانه ام شکست.

n.

pudding

['puːdɪŋ]

پودینگ، دسر شیرین



- ❖ A pudding is a sweet dessert.
- Would you like some chocolate pudding and coffee for dessert?
- آیا برای دسر مقداری پودینگ شکلاتی و قهوه می خواهید؟

n.

rail

[reɪl]

نرده



- ❖ A rail is horizontal bar made of metal or wood.
- The cat was sitting on the rail of the fence.

➤ گربه بر روی نرده ها نشسته بود.

n.

recipe

['resɪpi]

دستور آشپزی



- ❖ A recipe is a set of instructions to make food.
- The apple cake that you made is really tasty. Can I have the recipe, please?
- کیک سیبی که پخته ای بسیار خوشمزه است، می توانم دستور پخت آن را داشته باشم؟

n.

role

['æŋ[rəʊl]

نقش، وظیفه

k[ɒs]



- ❖ A role is the normal purpose or function of a person or thing.
- My role at work is to check the quality of the products.
- نقش من در محل کار کنترل کیفیت محصولات است.

v.

shrink

[ʃrɪŋk]

آب رفتن، کوچک شدن



- ❖ To shrink means to get smaller.
- If you stick to a healthy diet, your stomach will shrink!
- اگر به یک رژیم غذایی سالم پایبند باشید، حجم معده شما کاهش می یابد.



v.

soak

[səʊk]

خیساندن، خیس کردن



- ❖ To soak something means to make it very wet.
- You need to soak these beans overnight before you cook them.
- قبل از اینکه لوبیا ها را بپزید باید آن ها را کل شب بخیسانید.

n.

spark

[spa:k]

جرقه



- ❖ A spark is a small, quick flash of fire.
- As he welded the two pieces of metal together, sparks flew everywhere.
- زمانی که او دو فلز را به هم جوش می داد، جرقه به همه جا پاشید.

n.

spirit

['spirit]

روح



- ❖ A spirit is someone's feelings and personality, but not a physical body part.
- He has a very outgoing spirit. He can make friends with anyone.
- او دارای روحیه ای معاشرتی می باشد، او می تواند با هرکسی دوست شود.

n.

suit

[s(j)u:t]

کت و شلوار



- ❖ A suit is a set of clothes. It usually includes a jacket with pants or a skirt.
- I wore my new suit on my date with Melissa.
- در قرارم با ملیسا، کت و شلوار جدیدم را پوشیدم.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a set of clothes
 - spirit
 - suit
 - recipe
 - rail
- common people
 - folk
 - pleasure
 - absolute
 - attentive
- to get smaller
 - melt
 - pop
 - shrink
 - envision
- a large cloth worn on the back
 - patch
 - cape
 - spark
 - role
- happening at the same rate everywhere
 - evenly
 - alas
 - soaks
 - pudding

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- melt
 - to get smaller
 - to turn to liquid
 - to make wet
 - to imagine
- spark
 - a flash of fire
 - a set of clothes
 - a sweet dessert
 - a set of instructions
- rail
 - a horizontal bar
 - a common person
 - a normal purpose
 - a different part of a surface
- absolute
 - said when bad things happen
 - careful
 - happening at the same rate
 - total and complete
- pleasure
 - to make a noise
 - to get smaller
 - a feeling of happiness
 - personality

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. Mom made chocolate **pudding** _____.
2. He is very **attentive** _____.
3. People wore **cap**s more often _____.
4. His strong **spirit** _____.
5. I can't **envision** you _____.
6. It was a **pleasure** _____.
7. His **role** at work is _____.
8. The cat is sitting on the **rail** _____.
9. For this **recipe**, I will need _____.
10. There were **sparks** flying _____.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| a. of the fence | b. two hundred years ago |
| c. during science class | d. to manage the team of employees |
| e. flour, eggs and sugar | f. as a politician |
| g. for dessert last night | h. out of the computer |
| i. to meet you | j. could not be hurt from mean comments |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. If you wash this silk shirt in hot water, _____.
2. Tony didn't practice the presentation, _____.
3. I studied hard for the test, _____.
4. Dan was very unlucky _____.
5. Christmas is an important holiday _____.
6. If you put the butter near the fire, _____.
7. This pan was so dirty _____.
8. To protect the kingdom, _____.
9. I knew the television had broken _____.
10. At work, we have to dress well, _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. the soldiers spread out evenly | b. because he fell in a patch of rocks |
| c. so it was an absolute disaster | d. it will melt |
| e. it will shrink | f. when folks meet with their families |
| g. so I usually wear a suit | h. that I had to soak it overnight |
| i. when I heard the pop | j. but alas , I still didn't do very well |

Jack Frost and the Pudding

Every winter, a magical boy with a wild **spirit** named Jack Frost arrives in town. He wears a white **cape**, and his **role** is to cover everything with frost and ice. But Jack Frost also gets **pleasure** from playing tricks on common **folks**.

One dark winter evening, he was sitting on the **rail** of a fence near a river, pointing at some trees. When he did so, there was a **pop**, and the trees were **evenly** covered in frost.

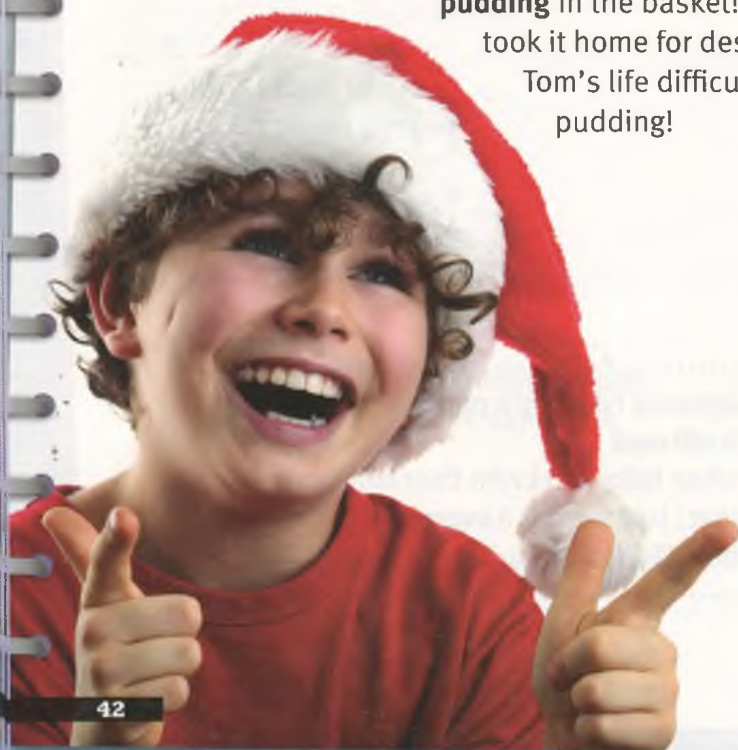
Then old Tom Muggins came along the path. He was carrying a basket of ingredients for his wife's cake **recipe**. "I'll have some fun with him!" said Jack Frost. He pointed, and suddenly there was a **patch** of ice on the path. Poor Tom slipped and fell into the river. The bags of flour, fruit and sugar fell open and got wet. A couple of eggs broke, and a stick of butter **shrank** in the water. Tom gathered the ingredients and climbed out of the river. The food made an **absolute** mess of the path. "**Alas!**" he cried. "There'll be no cake for me!"

Jack Frost laughed at poor Tom because his nice **suit** got **soaked** as well. "Are you cold?" he said. "Don't worry, I'll make you warm!" He pointed at the mess in Tom's basket. Suddenly, there was a **spark**. What was left of the food caught fire! Jack Frost ran off laughing.

Poor Tom sat by the fire. He could only **envision** how angry his wife would be. He wished he had been more **attentive** and noticed that Jack was around.

Suddenly, a pleasant smell came from the basket. Tom looked inside. The butter was **melting** and the eggs were starting to cook! Even the fruit began to simmer. Soon there was a fat, brown

pudding in the basket! Tom tasted it. It was delicious! He happily took it home for dessert. Although Jack Frost had tried to make Tom's life difficult, Jack had actually made Tom a wonderful pudding!



جک فراست و پودینگ

هر زمستان پسری جادویی با روحی وحشی به نام جک فراست وارد شهر می‌شود. او یک شئل سفید پوشیده است و نقش او این است که همه چیز را با یخ و سرما بپوشاند. اما جک فراست هم از شوخی کردن با آدم‌های معمولی لذت می‌برد.

یک شب تاریک زمستانی، او روی نرده یک حصار نزدیک رودخانه نشسته بود و به بعضی از درختان اشاره می‌کرد. وقتی این کار را می‌کرد، صدای تق و تقی آمد در حالی که درختان به طور مساوی پوشیده از یخ بودند.

بعد، باغبان پیر، تام، از راه رسید. او سبزی از مواد اولیه برای تهیه کیک همسر خود حمل می‌کرد. جک فراست گفت: "من با او شوخی می‌کنم!" با یک اشاره جک، ناگهان یک تکه یخ روی جاده بود. بیچاره تام لغزید و به رودخانه افتاد.

کیسه‌های آرد، میوه و شکر باز و خیس شدند. چند تخم‌مرغ شکسته و یک تکه کره در آب فرو رفت. تام مواد لازم را برداشت و از رودخانه بالا رفت. غذاها کاملا خراب شده بود. تام پیر فریاد زد: "افسوس! حالا دیگر کیکی در کار نیست!" جک فراست به تام بیچاره خندید چون لباس زیبای او هم خیس شده بود. جک گفت: "آیا سردت است؟ نگران نباش، من تو را گرم خواهم کرد!" او به سبد تام اشاره کرد و ناگهان باقی مانده غذاها جرقه زد و آتش گرفت! جک خنده کنان فرار کرد.

بیچاره تام کنار آتش نشست. فقط می‌توانست تصور کند که زنش چقدر عصبانی خواهد شد. آرزو می‌کرد که ای کاش بیشتر مراقب بود و متوجه می‌شد که جک آن اطراف است.

ناگهان بوی مطبوعی از سبد بیرون آمد. تام داخل سبد را نگاه کرد. کره داشت ذوب می‌شد و تخم‌مرغ‌ها شروع به پختن می‌کردند! حتی میوه‌ها شروع به آهسته جوشیدن کردند. به زودی یک پودینگ قهوه‌ای بزرگ در سبد بود! تام آن را چشید. خوش مزه بود! او با شادی پودینگ را برای دسر به خانه برد. با اینکه جک سعی کرده بود زندگی تام را دشوار کند، او در واقع برای تام یک پودینگ شگفت‌انگیز درست کرده بود!

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Tom Muggins likes playing tricks on folks.

2. ___ Jack Frost was sitting on the rail of a fence.

3. ___ Jack Frost's role is to cover everything with fire.

4. ___ Tom wished that he had been more attentive.

5. ___ Tom said "Alas!" because he knew he wouldn't have any cake.

6. ___ When Jack Frost set fire to the food, the eggs started to melt.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What was Tom wearing?
a. A nice suit
b. A wild spirit
c. A cape
d. White trousers
2. Which of the following was NOT an ingredient of the wonderful pudding?
a. A couple of eggs
b. Fruit
c. Sugar
d. Chocolate
3. What shrank when it got soaked in the river?
a. Tom's suit
b. A stick of butter
c. The basket
d. The flour
4. What happened when there was a pop sound?
a. Tom fell into the river.
b. The food caught fire.
c. The trees became covered in frost.
d. A patch of ice formed.



n.

account

[ə'kaunt]

حساب



- ❖ An account with a bank is an arrangement to keep one's money there.
- After I paid for the new car, my bank account was nearly empty.
- پس از خرید ماشین جدیدم، حساب بانکی من تقریباً خالی بود.

n.

architect

['ɑ:kitekt]

معمار



- ❖ An architect is a person who designs buildings.
- The plans for building the new home were drawn by a famous architect.
- برنامه های ساخت خانه جدید توسط یک معمار مشهور کشیده شده بود.

v.

conceal

[kən'si:l]

پنهان کردن، مخفی کردن



- ❖ To conceal something means to hide it.
- You should conceal your money so no one can take it from you.
- باید پولت را پنهان کنی تا کسی آن را از تو نگیرد.

n.

crime

[kraim]

جرم، جنایت



- ❖ A crime is something bad that a person does that can be punished by law.
- Police quickly arrived at the scene of the crime.
- پلیس سریعاً به محل وقوع جرم رسید.

n.

deed

[di:d]

سند، قرارداد



- ❖ A deed is a certificate that proves that someone owns something.
- When she bought the car, she was given a deed to show the car was hers.
- زمانی که او ماشین خرید، سندی را نشان داد تا بگوید ماشین برای اوست.

n.

gratitude

['grætɪt(j)u:d]

تشکر، قدردانی، سپاسگذاری



- ❖ gratitude is a feeling of being thankful.
- The kids showed Aunt Tess much gratitude for visiting them.
- کودکان، از عمه تس برای ملاقات آن ها بسیار تشکر کردند.

n.

habitat

['hæbɪtæt]

زیستگاه، محل سکونت



- ❖ A habitat is the natural home of animals or plants.
- Frogs are often found in a wet habitat, such as near a lake, river, or pond.
- اغلب ماهی در مناطق مرطوب مانند دریاچه، رودخانه و تالاب ها دیده می شود.

v.

intervene

[,ɪntə'veɪn]

مداخله کردن، پادرمیانی کردن



- ❖ To intervene means to help stop a problem between two people or groups.
- The students argued until the teacher intervened.
- دانش آموزان تا معلم مداخله ی معلم بحث کردند.

n.

landmark

['lændmɑ:k]

علامت مشخصه، جانما، نشانه



- ❖ A landmark is an object that helps people find or remember a location.
- The tall tree was used as a landmark for people to find the road to the inn.
- درخت بلند نشانه ای برای یافتن جاده ی مسافرخانه برای مردم استفاده می شد.

adj.

legal

['li:g(ə)]

حقوقی



- ❖ If something is legal, it is related to the law or allowed by the law.
- It was not legal for him to drive until he was eighteen years old.
- قبل از رسیدن او به سن 18 سالگی، رانندگی برای او غیر قانونی بود.

adj.

memorable

['mem(ə)rəbl]

به یاد ماندنی، خاطره انگیز



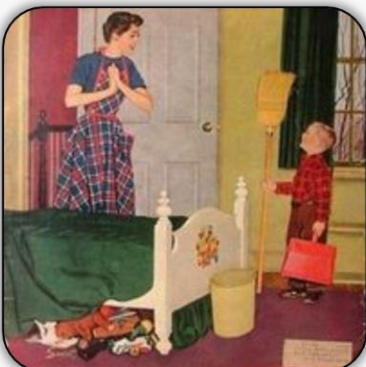
- ❖ If something is memorable, then it is remembered for a special reason.
- The party was memorable; people were still talking about it years later.
- مهمانی به یاد ماندنی بود، حتی پس از گذشت سال ها در مورد آن صحبت می کنند.

v.

oblige

[ə'blaɪdʒ]

وادار کردن، مجبور کردن



- ❖ To oblige someone means to require them to do something.
- If I wanted to have playtime, I was obliged to clean my room once a week.
- اگر خواهان زمان بازی بودم مجبور می شدم که هفته ای یک بار اتاقم را تمیز کنم.

n.

offense

[ə'fen(t)s]



جرم، قانون شکنی

- ❖ An offense is an action that breaks the law and requires punishment.
- He was put in jail for two days for the offense.

➤ او به دلیل قانون شکنی دو روز به زندان افتاد.

v.

proclaim

[prə'kleɪm]



اعلام کردن، اظهار داشتن

- ❖ To proclaim something means to say it in public.
- The army general proclaimed that the war was won.

➤ ژنرال ارتش به طور رسمی پیروزی در جنگ را اعلام کرد.

n.

rally

['ræli]



گردهمایی، تجمع

- ❖ A rally is a large public meeting in order to support something.
- The school had a rally in the gym to support the basketball team.

➤ مدرسه، یک گردهمایی در سالن ورزش برای حمایت از تیم بسکتبال به راه انداخت.

v.

resolve

[rɪ'zɒlv]



حل کردن، رفع کردن، برطرف کردن

- ❖ To resolve something means to find a solution.
- She resolved the problem with her children by giving them both a toy.

➤ او با دادن هر دو اسباب بازی، مشکل خود با فرزندانش را حل کرد.



n.

resource

[rɪ'zɔ:s]

منبع، منبع درآمد



- ❖ resources are a person or country's money and materials that they can use.
- The poor man didn't have the resources to feed himself.
- مرد بیچاره، منبعی برای تغذیه ی خود نداشت.

n.

sentence

['sentən(t)s]

حکم، مجازات



- ❖ A sentence is punishment given to someone who didn't follow the law.
- The sentence for stealing a car is much worse than for stealing candy.
- حکم دزدیدن ماشین بسیار بدتر از دزدیدن شکلات است.

v.

volunteer

[ˌvɒlən'tiə]

داوطلب شدن



- ❖ To volunteer means to offer to do something for free.
- Many people volunteered to help the adults learn to read.
- بسیاری از مردم برای آموزش خواندن به افراد بزرگسال، داوطلب شدند.

n.

witness

['wɪtnəs]

شاهد



- ❖ A witness is someone who sees or hears a crime or accident happen.
- The woman was the only witness of the horrible crime.
- زن تنها شاهد جرم وحشتناک بود.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to work to correct a problem between two people
 - oblige
 - intervene
 - conceal
 - volunteer
- allowed by the law
 - legal
 - offense
 - memorable
 - gratitude
- to find a solution
 - proclaim
 - sentence
 - resolve
 - rally
- an object that helps people remember a place
 - witness
 - landmark
 - account
 - resource
- something a person does that can be punished by law
 - architect
 - deed
 - habitat
 - crime

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- memorable
 - natural
 - thankful
 - special
 - public
- witness
 - a designer of buildings
 - an important person
 - someone who obeys the law
 - a person who sees a crime
- deed
 - money and materials
 - proof of ownership
 - a natural home
 - an action that breaks the law
- sentence
 - a punishment for a crime
 - an object that helps people
 - something against the law
 - a large public meeting
- proclaim
 - to hide something
 - to offer to help
 - to say in public
 - to stop a problem

Exercise 2

7

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- Which of the following is most likely a habitat?
a. A pond b. A bridge c. A broom d. A picture
- When something is concealed, what is it called?
a. Loud b. Colorful c. Hidden d. Quick
- What is something that an architect makes?
a. A law b. A house c. A cake d. A dress
- Which of the following is NOT legal?
a. Swimming b. Singing c. Crying d. Stealing
- What is someone who feels gratitude most likely to say?
a. "Hello." b. "I'm sorry." c. "Go away." d. "Thank you."

Exercise 3

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- The government has enough money and materials to help all its people.

- The town had a large public meeting to discuss the problem with the sidewalks.

- The necklace was remembered for a special reason because it was from her grandmother.

- His act that broke the law was serious enough to require him to stay in jail for 60 days.

- She had just enough money in her arrangement with the bank.

- Children are required to go to school in most countries.

- My uncle said in public that he was an old friend of the mayor.

- Four students offered to help to carry the table downstairs.

- A bear's natural home is usually large forests areas with mountains.

- He was filled with a feeling of being thankful when he was given the dog.

The Architect's Plan

An **architect** wanted to build a new office building. He selected some land that seemed perfect. He planned to cut down the trees to make room for the building. But there was a problem . . . a big problem.

The land was actually the **habitat** of several types of birds. Some nature lovers were very upset with the architect. First, they held a **rally** and told others about the issue. Then, they decided to take **legal** action because the architect didn't respect the animals' rights.

To **resolve** the problem, they asked a judge to **intervene**.

The judge could not call any **witnesses** for the nature lovers, so he first asked the architect to tell his side of the story.

"Why are you going to destroy the birds' habitat?" the judge asked.

The architect replied, "I have the **deed** to the land. I want to make a great building there. As you may know, all my buildings become **memorable landmarks**."

Then one of the nature lovers spoke. "We believe that there's no reason to destroy all the trees. We just want to protect the birds."

Then the judge made his decision. "I **proclaim** that the office building should be built," he said. "It is not a **crime** to remove those trees. I cannot give you a **sentence** for any **offenses**, but I feel **obliged** to make one request. I will only allow you to use half of the land. The other half will remain free, so the birds have a place to live.

The nature lovers could not **conceal** their **gratitude**. All of the people cheered.

The architect said, "I have an idea. I will **volunteer** my time and efforts to design a new type of building. It will provide bushes on the roof where birds can live. There are enough **resources** in my company's bank **account** to create the best building ever made."

The architect did exactly as he promised. He built this new type of building, which was loved by everyone.



نقشهٔ معمار

یک معمار می‌خواست یک ساختمان اداری جدید بسازد.

او زمینی را انتخاب کرد که به نظر عالی می‌رسید. او قصد داشت درختان را برای ساختن اتاق برای ساختمان قطع کند. اما یک مشکل وجود داشت... یک مشکل بزرگ.

زمین در واقع زیستگاه چندین نوع پرنده بود. بعضی از دوستداران طبیعت از معمار خیلی ناراحت بودند. اول، آن‌ها تظاهرات کردند و درباره این موضوع به دیگران گفتند. سپس آن‌ها تصمیم گرفتند اقدام قانونی کنند؛ چرا که معمار به حقوق حیوانات احترام نگذاشته بود. برای حل این مشکل، از قاضی خواستند که مداخله کند.

قاضی نتوانست هیچ شاهی برای طبیعت دوستان فرا بخواند، بنابراین او ابتدا از معمار پرسید که داستان را به او بگوید.

"چرا می‌خواهید زیستگاه این پرندگان را از بین ببرید؟" قاضی پرسید.

معمار جواب داد: "من سند مربوط به زمین را دارم. می‌خواهم در آنجا ساختمانی بزرگ بسازم. همانطور که واقفید، همه ساختمان‌های من به عنوان بنایی به یاد ماندنی، ماندگار شده‌اند" و سپس یکی از عاشقان طبیعت صحبت کرد: "ما معتقدیم که هیچ دلیلی برای نابود کردن همه درخت‌ها وجود ندارد. ما فقط می‌خواهیم از پرندگان محافظت کنیم." و سپس قاضی تصمیم خود را گرفت و گفت: "من اعلام می‌کنم که ساختمان اداری باید ساخته شود. من نمی‌توانم به هیچ اتهامی برای شما محکومیتی صادر کنم، اما احساس می‌کنم مجبور هستم یک تقاضا بکنم. من فقط به شما اجازه می‌دهم که نیمی از زمین را استفاده کنید. نیمه دیگر آزاد خواهند ماند، بنابراین پرندگان مکانی برای زندگی دارند."

دوستداران طبیعت نمی‌توانستند قدردانی خود را پنهان کنند. همه هورا کشیدند.

معمار گفت: "من یک ایده دارم. من وقت و تلاش خود را برای طراحی نوع جدیدی از ساختمان به صورت داوطلبانه به کار خواهم گرفت. این طراحی، درختی را بر روی سقف که پرندگان می‌توانند در آن زندگی کنند، فراهم می‌کند. منابع کافی در حساب بانکی شرکت من وجود دارد که بهترین ساختمان ساخته‌شده را ایجاد کند. او این نوع جدید از ساختمان را ساخت که همه آن را دوست داشتند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The architect wanted to build a new school.

2. ___ The land was the habitat of several types of birds.

3. ___ The judge first asked the architect what happened.

4. ___ The architect had a deed to the land.

5. ___ The architect could not conceal his gratitude, so he cheered.

6. ___ There were enough resources in the company's bank account to build a new building.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did the group have a rally?
 - a. To ask for more rights
 - b. To talk about the issue
 - c. To list names of witnesses
 - d. To talk to the architect
2. Which of the following about the land did the architect NOT tell the judge?
 - a. He wanted to make a great building.
 - b. He had a deed for the land.
 - c. He thought nobody lived there.
 - d. His building would be a memorable landmark.
3. What did the group do in order to resolve the problem with the architect?
 - a. Ask a judge to intervene
 - b. Proclaim war on the architect
 - c. Move the birds to a new habitat
 - d. Sell the land to the architect
4. What did the judge decide to give the architect as a sentencing?
 - a. He gave him five years in prison.
 - b. He had to pay the nature lovers money.
 - c. He could not build any more buildings.
 - d. He was not given a sentence.



n.

access

['ækses]

دسترسی، اجازه

- ❖ access is the right to enter or use something.
- The manager was the only person with access to the password.
- مدیر تنها کسی بود که به گذرواژه دسترسی داشت.

n.

conduct

['kɒndʌkt]

برخورد، رفتار

- ❖ conduct is the way that someone acts.
- She was punished for her bad conduct.
- او به خاطر رفتار بد خود تنبیه شد.

adj.

constant

['kɒn(t)stənt]

دائم، همیشگی، پیوسته

- ❖ When an event or action is constant, it happens a lot or all the time.
- The television at home is in constant use.
- تلویزیون خانه دائماً استفاده می شود.

n.

crack

[kræk]

ترک، شکاف

- ❖ A crack is a narrow space between the parts of something broken.
- The old window was covered with cracks.

➤ پنجره ی قدیمی پر از ترک بود.

n.

device

[di'vaɪs]

دستگاه، وسیله



- ❖ A device is an object or a machine.
- A thermometer is a device that tells temperature.

➤ دماسنج، وسیله است که دما را نشان می دهد.

v.

enclose

[ɪn'klaʊz]

محصور کردن، احاطه کردن



- ❖ To enclose something is to contain it.
- The cows in the field were enclosed by a fence.

➤ گاو های مزرعه توسط نرده ها احاطه شده بودند.

v.

grip

[grɪp]

محکم گرفتن



- ❖ To grip something is to hold it very tightly.
- I was scared, so I gripped my older sister's hand.

➤ من ترسیده بودم، بنابراین دست خواهر بزرگترم را محکم گرفتم.

v.

halt

[hɔ:lt]

ایستادن، ایستادگی کردن، متوقف کردن



- ❖ To halt is to stop moving.
- The criminal halted when he saw the police coming.

➤ زمانی که مجرم متوجه آمدن پلیس شد، توقف کرد.

adj.

impending

[im'pendɪŋ]

قریب الوقوع، نزدیک



❖ If something is impending, it is going to happen soon.

➤ The student was nervous about his impending test.

➤ دانش آموز برای امتحان غریب الوقوع خود مضطرب بود.

v.

influence

['ɪnfluənt(s)]

نفوذ کردن، تاثیر گذاشتن



❖ To influence someone or something is to have an effect over them.

➤ My friend influenced my decision to attend Terrance University.

➤ دوستم بر تصمیم من برای ورود به دانشگاه ترنس تاثیر گذاشت.

n.

law

[lɔ:]

قانون، حقوق



❖ A law is a rule made by the legislative body.

➤ The students learned about different laws during social studies class.

➤ دانش آموزان قوانین زیادی را در کلاس مطالعات اجتماعی یاد گرفتند.

n.

mode

[məʊd]

وضعیت، حالت



❖ A mode is a setting or condition on a machine.

➤ Mother turned the TV to quiet mode while she talked on the phone.

➤ مادر هنگام صحبت با تلفن، تلویزیون را در حالت سکوت گذاشت.



v.

perspire

[pə'spaɪə]

عرق کردن، عرق ریختن



- ❖ To perspire means to sweat.
- I usually perspire a lot when I am at practice.

➤ هنگام تمرین معمولا زیاد عرق می کنم.

v.

replace

[rɪ'pleɪs]

جایگزین کردن، عوض کردن



- ❖ To replace something is to put it in the place of something else.
- I replaced the tire on my car because it was flat.

➤ لاستیک ماشین خود را عوض کردم، چرا که پنچر شده بود.

v.

snap

[snæp]

شکستن



- ❖ To snap something means to break it suddenly, which causes a loud noise.
- I took the stick and snapped it with my hands.

➤ چوب را گرفتم و با دستانم آن را شکستم.

adj.

sly

[slɑɪ]

حیله گر، مکار



- ❖ If a person or animal is sly, they are sneaky or good at tricking people.
- The sly fox stole the eggs from the nest.

➤ روباه مکار تخم مرغ ها را از لانه دزدید.



v.

tend

[tend]

ميل داشتن، گرايش داشتن



- ❖ To tend to do something is to be likely to do it or to do it often.
- My mom tends to buy me the perfect gift each Christmas.
- مادرم هر کریسمس برای من کادوهای عالی می خرد.

adj.

valid

['vælid]

معتبر، صحيح



- ❖ When something is valid, it is correct or based on good reasoning.
- The expert's opinion on the subject was more valid than others.
- نظر متخصصین درباره این موضوع از نظر سایر افراد معتبر تر بود.

n.

version

['vɜ:(ə)n]

نسخه



- ❖ A version is an account of something that differs slightly from the original.
- She read the students British version of the Chinese fairy tale.
- او برای دانش آموزان نسخه ی انگلیسی افسانه ی چینی را خواند.

adv.

whatsoever [,(h)wɒtsəu'evə]

بهیچ وجه ،ابدا، هیچگونه



- ❖ You use whatsoever after a noun to emphasize that there is nothing of that thing.
- The boy had no idea whatsoever how to solve the story problem.
- او هیچ ایده ای در مورد اینکه چگونه مشکل داستان را حل کند نداشت.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. conduct / replace

Mr. Holloway was sent to _____ the old coach, who was known for his wild _____ during games.

2. influenced / laws

Decisions made in courts are often _____ by the personal views of the judge. In some cases, the decisions help change _____.

3. gripped / snapped

I _____ the pencil and squeezed it until it _____.

4. whatsoever / enclosed

My father _____ a check in the letter he sent me. He always offered to help even if I didn't ask for any help _____.

5. constantly / impending

The soldier dreaded the _____ battle. He _____ thought about what might happen to him.

6. tends / cracks

I saw several _____ in the ice. This _____ to happen when the weather becomes warmer.

7. device / mode

Sheila took the _____ from her purse and pressed a couple of buttons. It took her awhile to figure out how to turn it to silent _____.

8. halt / access

She ran from room to room quickly, but _____ suddenly. She couldn't have _____ to the room without a key.

9. valid / version

The student had a _____ reason for leaving the classroom when his teacher was gone. He tried to explain his _____ of what happened while she was gone.

10. sly / perspired

The thief _____ while the police questioned him. They didn't feel sorry for the _____ criminal.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. Scientists have a **device** that helps _____.
2. The driver **gripped** the wheel _____.
3. I always **perspire** more often _____.
4. The concert **halted** _____.
5. The sly boy took a cookie while _____.
6. My father **replaced** the old _____.
7. He had a **valid** reason _____.
8. I **snapped** the toy _____.
9. The teacher **tends** to give the best grades to _____.
10. I got no joy **whatsoever** from getting _____.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| a. as she turned around the corner | b. when the electricity went out |
| c. by holding it too tightly | d. light bulb with a new one |
| e. in the summer | f. them tell how old an object is |
| g. to miss school today | h. students who do all of their homework |
| i. my brother in trouble | j. his mother wasn't watching him |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. He didn't understand, _____.
2. He was told to behave, _____.
3. Joe was such a bad person _____.
4. To keep the jewels safe, _____.
5. Be careful _____.
6. Mark tried the code, _____.
7. She practices the violin during the day, _____.
8. He studied hard _____.
9. She turned her phone off, _____.
10. He replaced the glass _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. but he wasn't given access to the room | f. it was enclosed in glass |
| b. because he can influence people to do anything | g. because there were cracks in it |
| c. because the impeding test was so important | h. so they told him a different version |
| d. so the constant music wouldn't annoy the neighbors | i. so his conduct was excellent |
| e. that he broke every law | j. so the mode wouldn't disturb anyone |

Janie and the Music Player

Janie had **constant** thoughts about getting a music player. One day, she was late to class. She hurried down the hall but **halted** when she saw a backpack on the floor. She looked inside and found nothing but some books. She reached inside the bag and felt a small object at the bottom. It was a music player **enclosed** in a black case! Janie **tended** to be honest, and she had no **valid** reason to take the device. However, her desire for the player **influenced** her decision. Janie was being **sly**. She put the **device** into her own backpack. When she arrived at class, she gave her teacher the bag. "I found this," she said.

Ms. Johnson asked, "Does this backpack belong to anyone?" A girl named Linda claimed the bag. Linda looked inside and yelled, "My music player is missing! Janie took it!" Janie answered, "I did not." Linda responded, "You were the only one that had **access** to it! If your **version** of the story is true, you'll let Ms. Johnson check your bag." Janie started to **perspire** as she realized the **impending** trouble she was in. She **gripped** her bag tightly.

Ms. Johnson took the bag from Janie. Inside she found the player. "Janie, I never expected this kind of **conduct** from you," she said. "You've always been such a good student."

Ms. Johnson gave Linda the player. Linda said, "Ms. Johnson, look!" There was a **crack** along one side. She turned it to the "on" **mode**, but it wouldn't work. It must've **snapped** while Janie was holding onto the bag so tightly.

Ms. Johnson called Janie's parents. They were very upset. "Stealing is illegal. You have no respect for the **law whatsoever**," they said. "We bought you a music player, but we're giving it to Linda. It will **replace** the one you broke." In the end, Janie's bad behavior left her with nothing at all.



جینی و موزیک پلیر

جینی دارای افکار مدامی درباره گرفتن یک پخش‌کننده موسیقی بود. یک روز، او دیر به کلاس رسید. او با عجله از راهرو پایین رفت، اما وقتی یک کوله‌پشتی را دید که روی زمین افتاده متوقف شد. به داخل کیف نگاه کرد و چیزی جز چند کتاب نیافت. دستش را به داخل کیف دراز کرد و شی کوچکی را در ته آن احساس کرد. این یک پخش‌کننده موسیقی بود که در یک جعبه سیاه محصور شده بود! جینی تمایل داشت صادق باشد، و هیچ دلیل معتبری برای تصاحب این وسیله نداشت. با این حال، آرزوی او برای به دست آوردن این پخش‌کننده بر تصمیم او تاثیر گذاشت. جینی موزی و بدجنس شده بود. او دستگاه را در کوله‌پشتی خود گذاشت. وقتی به کلاس رسید، او کیف را به معلمش داد و گفت: "من این را پیدا کردم."

خانم جانسون پرسید: "آیا این کوله متعلق به کسی است؟" یک دختر به نام لیندا گفت که کیف متعلق به اوست. لیندا نگاهی داخل کوله انداخت و فریاد زد: "پخش‌کننده موسیقی من گم شده است، جینی تو آن را برداشتی!" جینی پاسخ داد: "من این کار را نکردم" لیندا پاسخ داد: "تو تنها کسی بودی که به آن دسترسی داشتی اگر روایت تو از داستان درست باشد، اجازه می‌دهی خانم جانسون کیفیت را چک کند." جینی که متوجه دردسر قریب الوقوع شده بود و داشت عرق می‌کرد، کیفش را محکم گرفت.

خانم جانسون کیف را از جینی گرفت. او گفت: "من هرگز انتظار چنین رفتاری را از تو نداشتم. تو همیشه دانش‌آموز خوبی بودی." خانم جانسون پخش‌کننده را به لیندا پس داد. لیندا گفت: "خانم جانسون، نگاه کن، یک ترک در یک طرف دستگاه وجود دارد." او آن را روشن کرد، اما کار نمی‌کرد. در حالی که جینی محکم به کیف چسبیده بوده، احتمالاً پخش‌کننده شکسته شده بود. خانم جانسون به والدین جینی زنگ زد. خیلی ناراحت بودند. آن‌ها گفتند: "سرقت غیر قانونی است و تو هیچ احترامی برای این قانون قائل نیستی" ما یک پخش‌کننده موسیقی برای تو خریدیم، اما حالا آن را به لیندا می‌دهیم. در پایان، رفتار بد جینی هیچ عایدی برایش نداشت.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Janie thought constantly about a device that played videos.

2. ___ Janie halted while she walked to class because she found a backpack.

3. ___ Janie found the player when she gripped the bag.

4. ___ The backpack belonged to a student in Janie's class.

5. ___ When Linda put the player to "on" mode, it started to work.

6. ___ Janie's parents gave the music player to Linda to replace the one she broke.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What did Janie find enclosed in the black case?
 - a. A music player
 - b. A backpack
 - c. A locker
 - d. A key
2. The reading explains that Janie lied to her teacher about what?
 - a. A backpack she found
 - b. Taking Linda's music player
 - c. The reason she snapped the player
 - d. How the player got a crack
3. What did Ms. Johnson NOT expect from Janie?
 - a. Bad conduct
 - b. Her banking information
 - c. Poor schoolwork
 - d. Her influence
4. Janie's parents said she had no respect whatsoever for what?
 - a. Her impending trouble
 - b. The law
 - c. Her sly behavior
 - d. The valid reasons

adv.

alongside

[əˌlɒŋ'saɪd]

در کنار



❖ If something is alongside another thing, then it is next to it.

➤ We work alongside each other in the office.

➤ ما در اداره کنار یکدیگر کار می کنیم.

n.

appetite

['æpɪtaɪt]

اشتها



❖ Your appetite is your hunger for food.

➤ Tom has a big appetite. He eats all the time.

➤ تام اشتهای زیادی دارد. او تمام وقت در حال خوردن است.

v.

assist

[ə'sɪst]

کمک کردن



❖ To assist someone is to help them.

➤ Andrew assisted me with my homework.

➤ اندرو در تکالیف به من کمک کرد.

n.

breeze

[bri:z]

نسیم



❖ A breeze is a soft wind.

➤ The breeze caused the leaves to fall off the tree.

➤ نسیم باعث افتادن برگ ها از درخت شد.

v.

defy

[dɪ'faɪ]

نافرمانی کردن، سرپیچی کردن



- ❖ To defy someone is to work against them or refuse to do what they say.
- The students got into trouble for defying their teacher's rules.
- دانش آموزان به دلیل سرپیچی از قوانین معلم به دردرس افتادند.

v.

display

[dɪs'pleɪ]

نشان دادن، نمایش دادن



- ❖ To display something is to show it, especially by putting it in a certain place.
- The museum displayed many wonderful paintings.
- موزه، نقاشی های شگفت انگیز بسیاری را به نمایش گذاشت.

adj.

efficient

[ɪ'fɪj(ə)nt]

کارآمد، موثر



- ❖ If something or someone is efficient, they do not waste energy.
- My car is very efficient. I rarely have to buy gas.
- ماشین من بسیار کارآمد است. من به ندرت بنزین می خرم.

adj.

feeble

['fi:bl]

ضعیف، ناتوان



- ❖ If someone is feeble, they are small or weak.
- The boy was too feeble to carry the object very far.
- آن پسر برای حمل این شی در مسیر طولانی، بسیار ضعیف بود.



v.

forgive

[fə'gɪv]

بخشیدن



- ❖ To forgive someone is to stop being angry with them.
- Sandra forgave Peter after he said he was sorry.

➤ ساندراس پس از عذر خواهی پیتر، او را بخشید.

adj.

lively

['laɪvli]

پرانرژی، سرزنده



- ❖ If someone is lively, they have a lot of energy.
- Jennifer is very lively: she's always running and playing.
- جنیفر بسیار سرزنده است، او دائماً در حال بازی و دویدن است.

adj.

majestic

[mə'dʒestɪk]

با شکوه، با عظمت



- ❖ If something is majestic, it is large and beautiful.
- The rich people lived in a big, majestic house.

➤ افراد ثروتمند در خانه های بزرگ و با شکوه زندگی کردند.

conj.

nor

[nɔ:]

و نه، نه، نه هم



- ❖ You use nor to connect two negative ideas.
- I eat neither apples nor oranges. I don't like either one.
- من نه سیب و نه پرتقال می خورم. من هیچ کدام از آن ها را دوست ندارم.



adj.

outraged

['autreɪdʒ(ɪ)d]

بسیار عصبانی، خشمگین

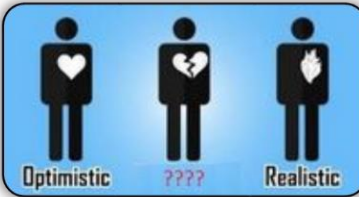
- ❖ If someone is outraged, they are very angry.
- My father was outraged when he saw that I had crashed his car.
- وقتی پدرم دید که با ماشینش تصادف کردم، بسیار عصبانی شد.

adj.

pessimistic

[,pesɪ'mɪstɪk]

بدبین، بدبینانه



- ❖ If someone is pessimistic, they believe that the worst will happen.
- John is pessimistic. He always thinks something bad will happen.
- جان بسیار بدبین است. او همیشه فکر می کند که اتفاق بدی پیش خواهد آمد.

n.

rumor

['ru:mə]

شایعه



- ❖ A rumor is something people talk about even though it may not be true.
- Kevin was spreading rumors about Marcia to everyone.
- کوین در مورد مارسیا در میان همه شایعه پراکنی می کرد.

v.

slap

[slæp]

سیلی زدن



- ❖ To slap someone means to hit them with the palm of the hand.
- Out of anger, Helen slapped Eunice on the face.
- به دلیل عصبانیت زیاد، هلن به صورت یونس سیلی زد.



v.

smash

[smæʃ]

خرد کردن، خرد و خاکشیر کردن



- ❖ To smash something is to break it into many small pieces.
- Jacob smashed the window with a rock.

➤ جیکوب پنجره را با سنگ شکست.

n.

subject

['sʌbdʒekt]

موضوع، مبحث



- ❖ A subject is the topic that is being discussed or taught.
- The subject of Marco's speech was the economy.

➤ موضوع سخنرانی مارکو اقتصاد بود.

n.

wage

[weɪdʒ]

دستمزد



- ❖ A wage is the money that a person gets for doing a job.
- The wages I receive from my job are really great!

➤ حقوقی که از کارم به دست می آورم بسیار زیاد است.

conj.

whereas

[(h)weə'reɪz]

در حالی که



- ❖ You use whereas to show how two things are different.
- My sister loves horror movies, whereas I prefer comedies.

➤ خواهرم عاشق فیلم های ترسناک است، اما من فیلم های کمدی را ترجیح می دهم.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a gentle wind
 - breeze
 - subject
 - appetite
 - display
- money for a job
 - rumor
 - wage
 - forgive
 - whereas
- big and beautiful
 - feeble
 - efficient
 - majestic
 - outraged
- full of energy
 - lively
 - pessimistic
 - nor
 - alongside
- used to show how two things are different
 - alongside
 - defy
 - smash
 - whereas

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- pessimistic
 - to show something
 - believing that something bad will happen
 - full of energy
 - large and beautiful
- slap
 - to hit someone
 - to break something
 - to be beside
 - to be small or weak
- rumor
 - to pay
 - to become windy
 - to be a sign
 - an unproven story
- outraged
 - angry
 - connecting two ideas
 - showing contrast
 - believing something bad will happen
- defy
 - hunger
 - to stop being angry
 - helping someone
 - to go against

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Jim walks to school beside Tim.

2. I needed Jamie to help me in fixing my car.

3. The story that may not be true about his life is spreading around town.

4. I spend all my money that I make at my job on new clothes.

5. The chair broke into small pieces when Rob sat down on it.

6. Bob is small and weak because he doesn't eat healthy food.

7. My new car is not wasteful.

8. My favorite topic to study in school is science.

9. She was very angry when someone stole her purse.

10. I stopped being angry at Joseph when he said he was sorry.

Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which of the following connects two negative ideas?
a. A breeze b. Nor c. Defy d. An outrage
2. What is a positive way to describe someone?
a. Forgive b. Pessimistic c. Lively d. Feeble
3. What can you study in school?
a. A breeze b. A subject c. A wage d. An outrage
4. What controls how much you eat?
a. Your appetite b. Your subject c. Your herald d. An efficient mouth
5. If you are showing something, what are you doing?
a. Assist b. Displaying it c. Slapped d. Smashed

Growing to be Great

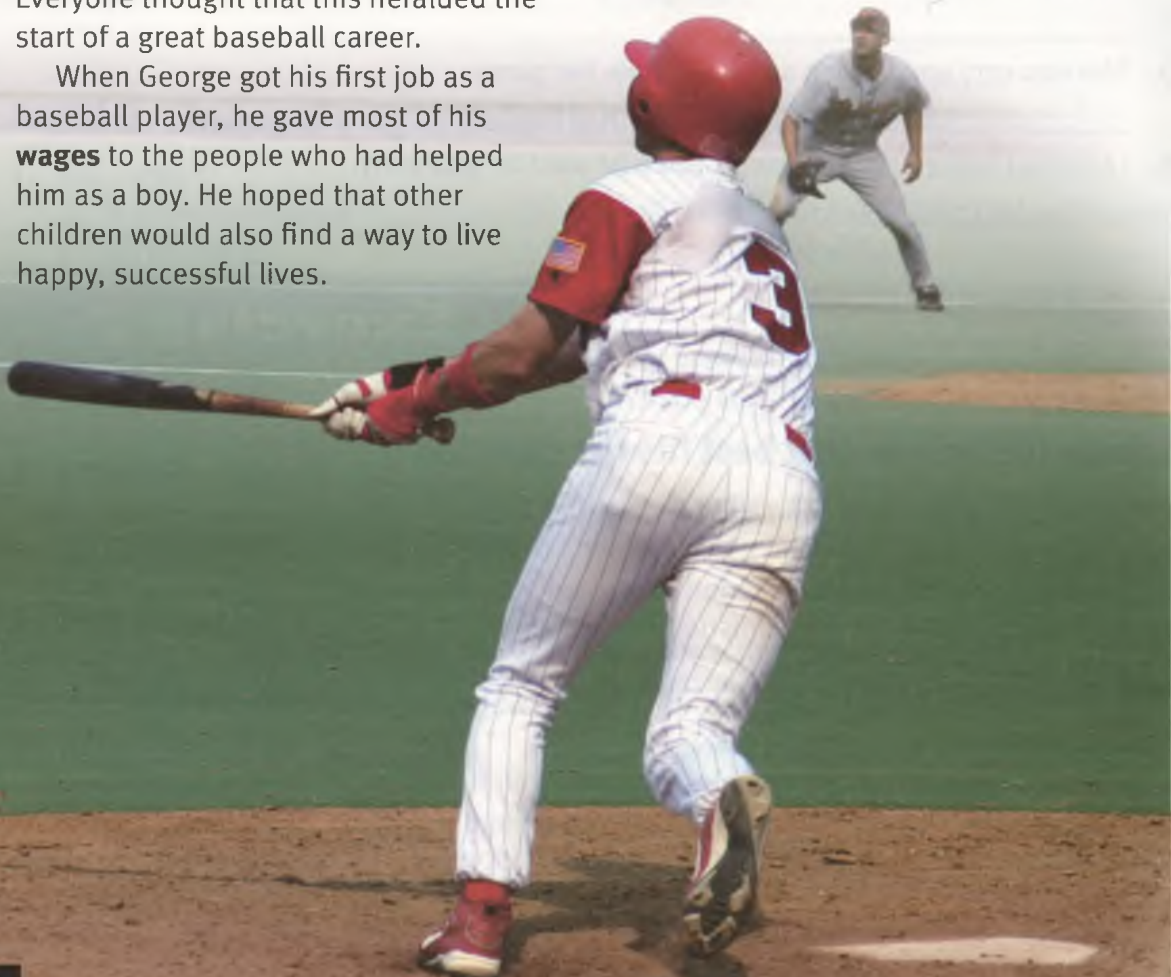
When George was just a boy, he didn't have any parents. The **rumor** was that they died in a car accident. Many bad things could have happened to George, but he was lucky. He was sent to live **alongside** other children without parents. There were kind people to **assist** George and help him go forward with his life. However, he was a **pessimistic** and mean little boy.

George was often **outraged**. He told mean rumors about the other kids. He **smashed** furniture and even **slapped** other boys. He **defied** anyone who tried to help him, and soon it was difficult for them to **forgive** him. But George did **display** a love for one thing. He loved to play baseball. **Whereas** he was lazy in school and liked neither the **subjects** **nor** the teachers, he was **lively** and happy when he played baseball.

One of George's teachers noticed his talent. He began to work with the boy. At first they only talked about baseball. The teacher watched George play. He was a very **efficient** hitter. He almost never missed the ball. The teacher thought that George looked **majestic** when he played. When George hit the ball, it flew through the **breeze** as if it would never come down. In time, they began to talk about other things. They talked about George's family and his dreams for the future. They developed a very good relationship.

As George got older, he began to grow. His **appetite** was huge. He ate and ate. He got stronger. Soon the other boys and even the teachers looked small and **feeble** next to him. Everyone thought that this heralded the start of a great baseball career.

When George got his first job as a baseball player, he gave most of his **wages** to the people who had helped him as a boy. He hoped that other children would also find a way to live happy, successful lives.



بزرگ و باعظمت شدن!

وقتی جورج فقط یک پسر بچه بود، هیچ پدر و مادری نداشت. شایعه این بود که آن‌ها در یک تصادف اتومبیل کشته شده‌اند. اتفاقات خیلی بدی می‌توانست برای جورج بیفتد، اما شانس آورد.

او برای زندگی در کنار سایر بچه‌های بی‌سرپرست فرستاده شد. افراد مهربانی بودند که به جورج کمک کنند تا به زندگی خود ادامه دهد. با این حال، او یک پسرک بدبین و بدجنس بود.

جورج اغلب عصبانی بود. او شایعات شیطنت آمیزی درباره سایر بچه‌ها درست می‌کرد. اسباب و اثاثیه را خرد می‌کرد و حتی به بچه‌های دیگر هم سیلی می‌زد. او با هر کسی که سعی می‌کرد به او کمک کند مبارزه می‌کرد، و به زودی برای آن‌ها دشوار بود که او را ببخشند. اما جورج بالاخره عشق به یک چیز را به نمایش گذاشت. او دوست بیسبال بازی کند. در حالی که او در مدرسه تنبل بود و نه درس‌ها را دوست داشت و نه معلم‌ها را، وقتی بیسبال بازی می‌کرد شاد و خوشحال بود.

یکی از معلمان جورج متوجه استعداد او شد و شروع به کار کردن با پسرک کرد. در ابتدا - آن‌ها فقط درباره بیسبال صحبت کردند. معلم بازی جورج را تماشا کرد. او یک توپ زن بسیار کارآمد بود. او تقریباً هرگز توپ را از دست نمی‌داد. معلم فکر می‌کرد که جورج وقتی بازی می‌کند با عظمت به نظر می‌رسد. هنگامی که جورج به توپ ضربه زد، از میان باد پرواز کرد، انگار هرگز پایین نیامده بود. در آن زمان، آن‌ها شروع به صحبت در مورد چیزهای دیگر کردند. آن‌ها در مورد خانواده سوم جرج و رویاهایش برای آینده صحبت کردند. آن‌ها روابط بسیار خوبی داشتند.

وقتی جرج بزرگ‌تر شد، شروع به رشد کرد. اشتهايش زياد بود. خورد و خورد. او قوی‌تر شد. کمی بعد دیگر بچه‌ها و حتی معلم‌ها هم کوچک و ضعیف به نظر می‌رسیدند. همه فکر می‌کردند که این کار نشانه شروع یک حرفه بیسبال عالی است.

هنگامی که جورج اولین شغلش را به عنوان یک بازیکن بیسبال گرفت، بیشتر حقوق خود را به کسانی داد که به او بعنوان یک پسر کمک کرده بودند. او امیدوار است که دیگر کودکان راهی برای زندگی شاد و موفق پیدا کنند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ George grew up alongside other children who didn't have parents.

2. ___ George looked majestic when he played baseball.

3. ___ George was a feeble boy with a small appetite.

4. ___ When George grew up, he gave some of his wages to the people who had assisted him.

5. ___ George was a lively student who liked many subjects.

6. ___ George smashed things and slapped other boys when he was outraged.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did one of George's teachers begin to work with him?
 - a. George displayed a talent for baseball.
 - b. No one wanted to talk to George.
 - c. George was a pessimistic student.
 - d. George didn't like the boys at school.
2. When was George lively and happy?
 - a. When he had lunch with other children
 - b. When he was playing baseball
 - c. When he was at school
 - d. When he got married
3. Why was George good at baseball?
 - a. He was very tall.
 - b. He could swim very well.
 - c. He was a very efficient hitter.
 - d. He usually defied his teachers.
4. What was the rumor about George's parents?
 - a. They were very sick.
 - b. They were not able to take care of him.
 - c. They went on a trip.
 - d. They died in a car accident.

adj.

animate

['ænimɪt]

جاندار، متحرک، زنده

❖ When something is animate, it has life.

➤ Rocks and machines are not animate things.

➤ صخره ها و ماشین ها اشیای جاندار نمی باشند.

v.

classify

['klæsɪfaɪ]

طبقه بندی کردن، دسته بندی کردن

❖ To classify things is to put them into groups based on their type.

➤ The biologist classified the plant as a completely new species.

➤ زیست شناسان گیاه را به عنوان یک گونه ی کاملا جدید دسته بندی کردند.

v.

concede

[kən'si:d]

اعتراف کردن، تصدیق کردن، پذیرفتن

❖ To concede is to admit that something is true against your wish.

➤ The student conceded that he had cheated on the test.

➤ دانش آموز تقرب خود در امتحان را پنهان کرد.

n.

concept

['kɒnsept]

مفهوم

❖ A concept is an idea about something.

➤ I learned some concepts of molecules before working in the science lab.

➤ پیش از کار در آزمایشگاه علمی، من مفاهیمی در مورد مولکول ها یاد گرفتم.

v.

construct

[kən'strʌkt]

ساختن، بنا کردن



- ❖ To construct something means to make or build it.
- The men used wood and metal to construct a house.
- آن مرد از چوب و فلز برای ساخت خانه استفاده کرد.

n.

decade

['dekeɪd]

دهه، ده سال



- ❖ A decade is a period of ten years.
- She celebrated her three decades of work with the company.
- او دهه سوم کار خود در شرکت را جشن گرفت.

n.

diagram

['daɪəgræm]

نمودار



- ❖ A diagram is a simple drawing that explains what something is or how it works.
- By following the diagram, I was able to put the desk together.
- با دنبال کردن نمودار، من می توانستم نیمکت را به هم وصل کنم.

n.

ferry

['feri]

کشتی مسافربری کوچک



- ❖ A ferry is a boat that carries passengers over short distances.
- The ferry took the people across the lake.
- کشتی مسافربری مردم را به آنطرف دریاچه جابه جا کرد.

adj.

handy

['hændi]

مفید، به درد بخور



❖ If something is handy, it is useful.

➤ An eraser is handy if you make a lot of mistakes.

➤ هنگامی که اشتباهات زیادی دارید، پاک کن به درد بخور می‌باشد.

v.

isolate

['aɪsəleɪt]

قرنطینه کردن، جدا کردن



❖ To isolate is to separate one person or thing from a group.

➤ The teacher isolated the bad child from the class before talking with her.

➤ معلم قبل از صحبت با او، دانش آموز بد را از کلاس جدا کرد.

n.

longing

['lɒŋɪŋ]

اشتیاق، میل



❖ A longing is a strong feeling of wanting.

➤ Since he skipped breakfast, he had a longing for food all morning.

➤ از آن جایی که او صبحانه نخورد، تمام صبح میل زیادی به غذا داشت.

adj.

numerous

['nju:m(ə)rəs]

متعدد، پرشمار، فراوان



❖ If something is numerous, there are many of those things.

➤ It was hard to drive fast since there were numerous holes in the road.

➤ به دلیل وجود چاله های بسیار در جاده، رانندگی با سرعت بالا مشکل بود.

n.

particle

['pa:tɪkl]

ذره، خرده



- ❖ A particle is a very small piece of something.
- The bottles of wine were covered in a layer of dust particles.
- شیشه ی مشروب با مقداری گرد و غبار پوشیده شده بود.

n.

plea

[pli:]

درخواست، تقاضا، دادخواست



- ❖ A plea is a request that is urgent or emotional.
- The poor, hungry man made a plea for food.
- مرد فقیر بیچاره در خواست غذا کرد.

v.

refrain

[ri'freɪn]

اجتناب کردن، خودداری کردن



- ❖ To refrain from something is to avoid doing it.
- The doctor asked Mary to refrain from eating fast food as part of her diet.
- دکتر از ماری خواست که از خوردن فست فود در رژیم خود اجتناب کند.

n.

review

[ri'vju:]

نقد، بررسی، تحلیل



- ❖ A review of something is a formal inspection of it by people in authority.
- The government ordered a careful review of the economic situation.
- دولت خواستار بررسی دقیق شرایط اقتصادی شد.

adj.

sophisticated [sə'fɪstɪkətɪd]

فرهیخته، آگاه



- ❖ If someone is sophisticated, they know many things about the world.
- Jake is one of the most sophisticated persons I've ever met.
- جیک یکی از باهوش ترین افرادی است که تا به حال دیده ام.

v.

surrender [sə'rendə]

تسلیم شدن، تحویل دادن



- ❖ To surrender something is to give it up.
- The thief surrendered the money to the police when he was caught.
- زمانی که دزد توسط پلیس دستگیر شد، پول را تحویل داد.

adj.

upright [ˈʌpraɪt]

ایستاده، عمودی، راست



- ❖ If something is upright, it is standing up straight.
- Meerkats can't walk like humans, but they can stand upright.
- میرکت ها نمی توانند مانند انسان راه بروند اما می توانند صاف بایستند.

adj.

worthwhile [ˌwɜːθ'waɪl]

ارزشمند، ارزنده، سودمند



- ❖ If something is worthwhile, it is important or useful.
- On his visit to Canada, he realized studying English was worthwhile.
- در ملاقات او از کانادا، او از ارزش مطالعه‌ی انگلیسی آگاه شد.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a formal inspection
 - review
 - diagram
 - plea
 - longing
- to accept the truth
 - isolate
 - classify
 - construct
 - concede
- an idea about how something is
 - decade
 - ferry
 - concept
 - particle
- knowing a lot about the world
 - upright
 - sophisticated
 - handy
 - surrender
- important
 - refrain
 - numerous
 - worthwhile
 - animate

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- particle
 - a small piece of something
 - a drawing
 - a formal inspection
 - a strong feeling of want
- decade
 - an idea about something
 - a period of ten years
 - a type of boat
 - a thing that has life
- upright
 - important
 - to not do something
 - standing straight
 - a request
- isolate
 - to separate
 - to group together by type
 - to give up
 - to accept the truth
- handy
 - to make something
 - common
 - plentiful
 - useful

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. animate / particle

Scientists thought that the tiny _____ was not a living thing, so they were very surprised to find that it was indeed _____.

2. handy / numerous

My uncle, the carpenter, keeps _____ tools in his truck. However, he keeps the most _____ ones on his tool belt at all times.

3. classify / upright

One way that scientists _____ the different species of early humans is by how they walked. *Homo Erectus*, for example, walked _____.

4. longing / plea

After sitting in the cell for just one hour, the prisoner felt a _____ to be free. He made a _____ to the officers to release him immediately.

5. sophisticated / worthwhile

Learning how to speak another language is a _____ skill to have in the world of international business. It also can make one into a more _____ person.

6. review / concept

Jack had a great _____ for a new system, but his boss needs to conduct a thorough _____ to see if it will work.

7. diagram / isolate

William used a piece of white paper to _____ the different plants in the garden. That made it easier for him to draw a _____ of the leaves of each type of plant.

8. constructed / decades

The great pyramids of Egypt were not _____ overnight. In fact, it took many _____ to complete them.

9. concede / ferry

As he drove his car onto the _____, John felt sad. He wanted to travel by airplane, but after looking at ticket prices, he had to _____ that air travel was just too expensive.

10. refrain / surrender

In maintaining good health, it is important to _____ from eating unhealthy foods. But that doesn't mean you must _____ all of the foods that you enjoy.

Anton's Great Discovery

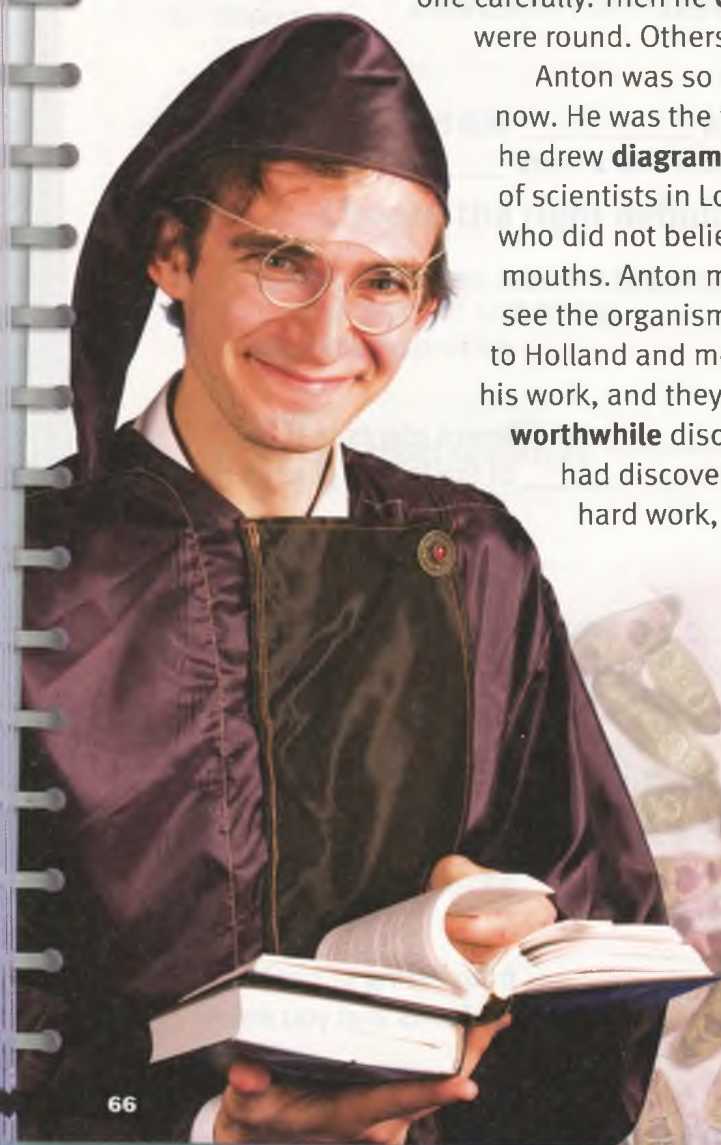
Anton Van Leeuwenhoek was a Dutch cloth merchant. His life began to change after he got his first microscope in 1653. It was a very simple microscope. It had a lens in an **upright** stand. It could make small things look large. It was **handy** for looking closely at cloth.

Soon, Anton felt a **longing** to build a more powerful microscope. He dreamed of using it to make an important scientific discovery. He wanted to become famous. Three **decades** later, he did.

For many years, Anton experimented with microscopes and lenses. Eventually he **constructed** a very powerful microscope. If he had sold the **concept** to others, it would have made him very rich. However, Anton **refrained** from **surrendering** his secret to anyone. Instead, he wanted to use it to become famous. So he used his secret microscope to study the natural world.

One day he was looking at saliva from his mouth with the microscope. In the saliva, he saw **numerous** tiny **particles**. Some of them were moving! He thought that the particles were tiny organisms. So he **isolated** them from each other and studied each one carefully. Then he **classified** them into different categories. Some were round. Others were long and had tails. All were alive.

Anton was so excited. He knew he could become famous now. He was the first person to see these tiny organisms. So he drew **diagrams** of the organisms and sent them to a group of scientists in London. The scientists were **sophisticated** men who did not believe tiny, **animate** organisms could live in our mouths. Anton made a **plea** for them to come to Holland to see the organisms with their own eyes. The men took a **ferry** to Holland and met Anton. They performed a careful **review** of his work, and they **conceded** that he had made a **worthwhile** discovery. Anton Van Leeuwenhoek had discovered bacteria. After decades of hard work, he had become famous.



کشف بزرگ آنتون

آنتون ون لیون هوک تاجری هلندی بود. بعد از اینکه اولین میکروسکوپ خود را در سال ۱۶۵۳ ساخت زندگی او شروع به تغییر کرد. میکروسکوپ بسیار ساده‌ای بود. این میکروسکوپ یک لنز در یک پایه عمودی داشت. می‌توانست چیزهای کوچک را بزرگ نمای کند که بزرگ به نظر برسد. برای نگاه کردن به پارچه مفید بود.

طولی نکشید که آنتون تصمیم گرفت یک میکروسکوپ قوی‌تر بسازد. او آرزو داشت که از آن برای یک کشف علمی مهم استفاده کند. می‌خواست مشهور شود. سه دهه بعد، او این کار را کرد.

آنتون سال‌ها با میکروسکوپ و عدسی آزمایش کرد. سرانجام او یک میکروسکوپ بسیار قدرتمند ساخت. اگر او این وسیله را به دیگران فروخته بود، بسیار ثروتمند می‌شد. با این همه، آنتون از افشای راز خود برای دیگران خودداری کرد. در عوض می‌خواست از آن برای مشهور شدن استفاده کند. بنابراین او از میکروسکوپ مخفی خود برای مطالعه دنیای طبیعی استفاده کرد.

یک روز به بزاق دهانش با میکروسکوپ نگاه می‌کرد. در بزاق، ذرات ریز متعددی را دید. بعضی از آن‌ها حرکت می‌کردند! او فکر می‌کرد که ارگانیسم‌های بسیار کوچک هستند. بنابراین آن‌ها را از هم جدا کرد و با دقت هر کدام را بررسی کرد. سپس آن‌ها را به دسته‌های مختلف طبقه‌بندی کرد. عده‌ای کروی شکل شدند. دیگران دراز بودند و دم داشتند. همه زنده بودند.

آنتون بسیار هیجان‌زده بود. او می‌دانست که اکنون می‌تواند مشهور شود. او اولین کسی بود که این موجودات کوچک را دید. بنابراین او نمودارها را کشید و آن‌ها را به گروهی از دانشمندان در لندن فرستاد. دانشمندان مردانی پیچیده بودند که باور نمی‌کردند موجودات زنده و جاندار در دهان ما زندگی کنند. آنتون تقاضا کرد که آن‌ها به هلند بیایند تا موجودات زنده را با چشمان خود ببینند. مردان با کشتی به هلند رفتند و آنتون را دیدند. آن‌ها بازیابی دقیق کارش را انجام دادند و آن‌ها تصدیق کردند که کشف ارزشمندی کرده‌است. آنتون ون لیون هوک باکتری را کشف کرد. پس از دهه‌ها کار سخت، او مشهور شد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Anton's first microscope had an upright stand.

2. ___ Anton had a longing to become rich.

3. ___ The tiny particles Anton saw were bacteria.

4. ___ Anton classified the particles into different categories.

5. ___ The sophisticated scientists drew diagrams of the bacteria.

6. ___ Anton took a ferry to Holland.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which is true about Anton's discovery?
 - a. It isolated him from his work.
 - b. It was not worthwhile.
 - c. It was handy for his business.
 - d. It took him three decades to make it.
2. Why was Anton's first microscope handy?
 - a. It made him rich.
 - b. It helped him look at cloth.
 - c. It was easy to construct.
 - d. It made him famous.
3. What was Anton's plea to the scientists?
 - a. To buy his microscope
 - b. To send him animate organisms
 - c. To invite him to London
 - d. To see the particles with their own eyes
4. Why didn't Anton sell his concept of a powerful microscope?
 - a. He didn't want to surrender his secret.
 - b. Scientists needed to review it first.
 - c. He was already rich.
 - d. It wasn't perfected yet.

n.

alliance

[ə'laɪən(t)s]

اتحاد، پیمان، معاهده



- ❖ An alliance is a group of people who work together.
- The junior executives formed an alliance with each other.
- مدیران تازه کار، معاهده ای را با یکدیگر ایجاد کردند.

n.

applause

[ə'pləʊz]

تشویق



- ❖ applause is the noise made when people clap hands to show approval.
- At the end of his speech, everyone gave applause.
- در پایان سخنرانی اش، همه او را تشویق کردند.

adj.

armed

[ɑ:md]

مسلح



- ❖ If you are armed, you are carrying a weapon.
- The robber was armed with a gun.
- دزد مسلح به تفنگ بود.

adj.

authoritative

[ɔ:'θɔ:rtətɪv]

معتبر، موثق



- ❖ If something is authoritative, it uses the best information available.
- This book is an authoritative source on Ancient Egypt's Queen Nefertiti.
- این کتاب یک منبع ارزشمند در مورد ملکه ی مصر باستان نفرتیتی می باشد.

n.

ceremony

['seriməni]

مراسم، جشن

- ❖ A ceremony is an event that happens on special occasions.
- Tom and Amy's marriage ceremony is in June.

➤ جشن ازدواج تام و ایمی ماه جون می باشد.

n.

culture

['kʌltʃə]

فرهنگ

- ❖ culture is the music, art, and writings of a certain place or group of people.
- Ancient Mexican culture is renowned for its architecture.

➤ فرهنگ مکزیک باستان به معماری شهره است.

n.

defense

[di'fens]

دفاع

- ❖ A defense is something that is done to protect another thing.
- The air force works in defense of its country.

➤ نیروی هوایی از کشور دفاع می کند.

n.

detail

['di:teɪl]

جزئیات

- ❖ A detail is a small piece of information.
- Jane told Ben all the details of her trip to China.

➤ جین تمام جزئیات سفر خود را به بن گفت.

adj.

diverse

[daɪ'vɜ:s]

متنوع، گوناگون



- ❖ When a group of things is diverse, it is made up of a wide variety of things.
- Big cities have diverse populations with people of different races and ages.
- شهرهای بزرگ جمعیت متنوعی از نژاد و سنین متفاوت دارند.

v.

enchant

[ɪn'tʃɑ:nt]

مجذوب کردن، مسحور کردن



- ❖ To enchant someone is to make them feel very interested or happy.
- The beautiful woman enchanted everybody in the room.
- زن زیبا هر کسی را در اتاق مجذوب خود کرد.

v.

equip

[i'kwɪp]

تجهیز کردن، مجهز کردن



- ❖ To equip someone is to give them the things needed to do something.
- Steve was equipped with the tools needed to do the job.
- استیو به تمام ابزاری که برای کار نیاز داشت مجهز بود.

n.

exception

[ɪk'sepʃ(ə)n]

استثنا



- ❖ An exception is someone or something not conforming to a rule.
- Most students thought the test was hard, but Tim was the exception.
- همه ی دانش آموزان به جز تیم اعتقاد داشتند که امتحان سخت بود.

n.

genre

[ʒɑŋrə]

ژانر



- ❖ A genre is a type of literature, art, or music characterized by its style.
- She is considered a master in the comedy genre.

➤ او در ژانر کمدی به عنوان استاد شناخته می شود.

n.

impact

['ɪmpækt]

تاثیر، اثر، نفوذ



- ❖ An impact is the effect someone or something has on another. A strong influence.
- My grandmother had a great impact on my life.

➤ مادربزرگم تاثیر بسیاری بر زندگی من داشت.

v.

lure

[l(j)ʊə]

جذب کردن، اغوا کردن، وسوسه کردن



- ❖ To lure someone is to convince them to do something, by using a trick.
- The store lures people in with big signs that say "Sale!"
- مغازه با علامت حراج، افراد را به سمت خود جذب می کند.

n.

obstacle

['ɒbstəkl]

مانع، مشکل



- ❖ An obstacle is an object or a problem that stops you from doing something.
- Climbing over the giant rock was the biggest obstacle for the hikers.

➤ بالا رفتن از صخره های غول پیکر، بزرگترین مانع صخره نوردان بود.



n.

shelter

['ʃeltə]

پناهگاه، سرپناه



- ❖ A shelter is a place to go that is safe from danger or bad weather.
- The frog took shelter from the storm in a nearby cave.
- قورباغه برای نجات از توفان به غار نزدیک پناه برد.

v.

sort

[sɔ:t]

دسته بندی کردن، طبقه بندی کردن



- ❖ To sort means to separate things into different groups or classes.
- He sorted his clothes by colors and sizes.
- او لباس هایش را بر اساس رنگ و اندازه طبقه بندی کرد.

v.

supply

[sə'plai]

تامین کردن، تدارک دیدن



- ❖ To supply something means to give people what they need or want.
- The water heater supplied the house with warm water.
- گرم کننده آب برای خانه آب گرم فراهم کرد.

adj.

vain

[veɪn]

مغرور، خودخواه، متکبر



- ❖ If people are vain, they are only concerned with how they look.
- Rebecca is so vain that she looks at herself in every mirror.
- ربکا بسیار مغرور است، طوری که او در هر آئینه ای خود را نگاه می کند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to provide the things that someone needs to do something
a. sort b. enchant c. equip d. lure
- a safe place
a. genre b. shelter c. defense d. culture
- holding a weapon
a. authoritative b. vain c. diverse d. armed
- pieces of information
a. details b. impacts c. applause d. supplies
- a group working together
a. ceremony b. alliance c. exception d. obstacle

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- Please put into different groups all the leaves you find.

- Everybody was very interested when Kate read that beautiful poem out loud.

- The performer heard great sounds of people clapping their hands.

- Tim takes a long time to get ready because he is so concerned with how he looks.

- Ocean life is made up of a wide variety of things.

- What is your favorite kind or style of music?

- The special event will start at 8 o'clock tonight.

- The city's only action taken to protect itself was to build a giant brick wall around it.

- Ben went through many problems before he finished his project.

- Most girls like to play with dolls, but Samantha is the one who doesn't conform.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. I'm going to try to lure my friends _____.
2. Sort the pieces _____.
3. The biggest **obstacle** Mary faced _____.
4. The **genre** of abstract art _____.
5. The awards **ceremony** is _____.
6. Mexican **culture** is _____.
7. The best **defense** against skin cancer _____.
8. The students were **equipped** _____.
9. An **armed** man ran into _____.
10. The **vain** woman could _____.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. was popularized by artists like Picasso and Dali | |
| b. is to wear a lot of sunscreen | c. with pencils, scissors, and a lot of glue |
| d. known for its interesting folk art | e. into coming to the museum with me |
| f. tonight at the Royal Crown Hotel | g. talk about herself for hours and hours |
| h. into three equal groups | i. was not being able to read very well |
| j. the jewelry store and stole diamonds | |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. It started raining really hard, _____.
2. He saw that the children were cold, _____.
3. Police officers work very hard, _____.
4. Everyone always trusts Seth _____.
5. Mother Teresa was a very well-known person, _____.
6. He only likes one type of music, _____.
7. James tried to write the report last night, _____.
8. I don't really like Jennifer, _____.
9. Bob and Eric both want to beat James at the game, _____.
10. The performer did a great job, _____.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a. and officer Jones is no exception | b. and her work impacted many lives |
| c. but everyone else is enchanted by her | d. but I like a diverse selection |
| e. so we ran inside for shelter | f. so they will form an alliance |
| g. and the crowd gave him great applause | h. so he supplied them with blankets |
| i. but it had so many details that he couldn't finish | |
| j. because he sounds authoritative when he speaks | |

How a Singer Helped Win the War

Sometimes famous people are **vain**. They only care about themselves. But Josephine Baker was an **exception**. In the 1930s and 1940s, Baker was one of the most famous women in France. She was a big part of the new jazz **genre** and **culture** and had a **diverse** group of fans. The French people especially loved her. And she loved France. So when World War II started, she wanted to help the nation that had given her so much.

In 1940, **armed** German troops entered Paris. When this happened, some French people formed a secret **alliance**. It was called the *French Resistance*. The group worked for the **defense** of France. It helped the European and American armies fight the Germans.

Baker was an important member of the Resistance. She had three jobs. The first was to carry messages to and from other members. The messages were written in code on her sheets of music. The second was to provide **shelter** and **supply** goods to Resistance members. It would have been dangerous if the Germans found them.

Baker's third job was the most important. Baker held concerts for European politicians and army members. She **lured** them in, promising an entertaining show. She **enchanted** them with her singing and dancing and got lots of **applause**.

But Baker was always **equipped** with a small notebook at these concerts. She listened for **details** about the war and wrote them down. Baker **sorted** the details and gave **authoritative** reports to the Resistance.

Some thought Baker's fame would be an **obstacle**. The Germans knew who she was, but they didn't think she was smart enough to work for the Resistance. So she could get information from the Germans easily. This helped the Resistance and the French army save lives and win the war.

Baker had a big **impact** on the Resistance's work. She got many awards for her help. When she died, the army had a special **ceremony** to thank her again for her bravery.



چگونه یک خواننده به پیروزی در جنگ کمک کرد!

بعضی وقت‌ها آدم‌های مشهور خودپسند هستند. آن‌ها فقط به خودشان اهمیت می‌دهند. اما ژوزفین بیکر یک استثنا بود. در دهه‌های ۱۹۳۰ و ۱۹۴۰، بیکر یکی از مشهورترین زنان فرانسه بود. او بخش بزرگی از سبک و فرهنگ جاز جدید بود و گروه متنوعی از طرفداران داشت. مردم فرانسه به خصوص او را دوست داشتند. و او نیز فرانسه را دوست می‌داشت. بنابراین هنگامی که جنگ جهانی دوم شروع شد، او می‌خواست به کشوری که همه چیزش را به او داده بود کمک کند.

در سال ۱۹۴۰، سربازان مسلح آلمان وارد پاریس شدند. وقتی این اتفاق افتاد، برخی از مردم فرانسه یک اتحاد پنهانی تشکیل دادند. این مقاومت، مقاومت فرانسه نامیده می‌شد. این گروه برای دفاع از فرانسه کار می‌کرد. این کار به ارتش‌های اروپایی و آمریکایی کمک کرد تا با آلمان‌ها مبارزه کنند.

بیکر یکی از اعضای مهم مقاومت بود. او سه شغل داشت. اولی برای حمل پیام‌ها به افراد دیگر بود. پیام‌هایی بر روی صفحات موسیقی او نوشته شده بود. دوم تامین سرپناه و تامین کالاهای تدارکاتی برای اعضای مقاومت بود. اگر آلمان‌ها آن‌ها را پیدا می‌کردند خطرناک می‌شد.

شغل سوم بیکر از همه مهم‌تر بود. بیکر کنسرت‌ها را برای سیاستمداران اروپایی و اعضای ارتش برگزار کرد. او آن‌ها را به دام انداخت و وعده یک برنامه سرگرم‌کننده را داد. او آن‌ها را با آواز و رقص خود افسون می‌کرد و تشویق و تمجید بسیاری به دست می‌آورد. اما بیکر در این کنسرت‌ها همیشه به یک دفتر کوچک مجهز بود. او به جزئیات مربوط به جنگ گوش داد و آن‌ها را یادداشت کرد. بیکر جزئیات را مرتب کرد و گزارش‌های موثق به مقاومت داد.

برخی فکر می‌کردند شهرت بیکر یک مانع خواهد بود. آلمانی‌ها می‌دانستند که او کیست، اما فکر نمی‌کردند که او به اندازه کافی باهوش باشد که بتواند برای مقاومت عمل کند. بنابراین او می‌تواند به راحتی اطلاعات را از آلمان دریافت کند. این کار به مقاومت و ارتش فرانسه در نجات جان و پیروزی در جنگ کمک کرد.

بیکر تاثیر بزرگی روی کار مقاومت وارد کرد. او برای کمکش بسیاری از جوایز را دریافت کرد. هنگامی که او مرد، ارتش مراسم ویژه‌ای برای تشکر از او به خاطر شجاعتش برگزار کرد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Baker's first job was to carry messages written in code to and from European politicians.

2. ___ Baker provided shelter for Resistance members and supplied them with goods.

3. ___ Baker was always equipped with a small notebook during her concerts.

4. ___ In 1940, armed German troops entered Europe.

5. ___ Baker enchanted politicians and army members with her singing and dancing.

6. ___ Baker sorted details about the war and gave authoritative reports.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which genre of music was Josephine Baker famous for?
a. She was famous for jazz music. b. She was famous for blues music.
c. She was famous for rock music. d. She was famous for country music.
2. What happened when the Germans entered Paris?
a. Armed soldiers fought them. b. Baker lured them back to Germany.
c. The French formed a secret alliance. d. They sent messages in code.
3. What was Baker's most important job?
a. To provide shelter b. To give authoritative reports
c. To write messages in code d. To have a diverse group of fans
4. What happened when Baker died?
a. The army had a special ceremony. b. Baker had an impact on France.
c. Her fame became an obstacle. d. The Resistance found her secret codes.

n.

alternative

[ɔ:l'tɜ:nətɪv]

چاره، جایگزین



- ❖ An alternative is something that you can choose instead of your first choice.
- Her first plan to make extra money seemed weak, so she chose an alternative.
- اولین برنامه ی او برای به دست آوردن پول ضعیف بود، بنابراین او یک راه جایگزین را انتخاب کرد.

n.

avenue

['ævən(j)u:]

خیابان



- ❖ An avenue is a road, often a large one with buildings on each side.
- Drive down this avenue and then turn left to go to the park.
- از این خیابان پایین بروید و سپس برای رفتن به پارک به چپ بپیچید.

n.

belly

['belɪ]

شکم



- ❖ The belly is the stomach of a person or animal.
- His belly was full because he ate a lot of food.
- شکم او پر بود چرا که غذای زیادی خورده بود.

n.

bid

[bɪd]

پیشنهاد، درخواست



- ❖ A bid to do something is an attempt to do it.
- He made a bid to become the university's next president.
- او برای ریاست بعدی دانشگاه درخواست داد.

v.

blow

[bləʊ]

وزیدن



- ❖ To blow means to move air or move something through the air, as in the wind.
- The wind is blowing very hard today. We should stay inside.
- امروز باد به شدت می وزد، باید در خانه بمانیم.

n.

conflict

['kɒnflɪkt]

کشمکش، تضاد، اختلاف



- ❖ A conflict is a fight between different people or groups.
- The two nations had a conflict over which one could use the water in the river.
- دو کشور بر سر اینکه کدامیک از آب رودخانه استفاده کنند، کشمکش داشتند.

n.

continent

['kɒntɪnənt]

قاره



- ❖ A continent is one of the seven large areas of land on the Earth.
- Asia is the largest continent.
- آسیا بزرگترین قاره است.

n.

current

['kʌr(ə)nt]

جریان



- ❖ A current is a steady and constant flow of air or water in a river or ocean.
- The ocean currents took the ship far off into the sea.
- جریان اقیانوس، کشتی را به دور دست ها برد.

n.

disrespect

[ˌdɪsrɪsˈpekt]

بی احترامی



- ❖ disrespect is rudeness or a behavior that shows a lack of respect.
- He showed disrespect by arguing with his boss during a meeting.
- او با بحث خود با رئیس حین جلسه، بی احترامی کرد.

n.

enthusiasm

[ɪnˈθjuːzɪæz(ə)m]

شور و شوق، اشتیاق، ذوق



- ❖ enthusiasm is a very strong good feeling about something.
- The crowd showed their enthusiasm for the soccer team by cheering loudly.
- جمعیت شور و شوق خود برای تیم فوتبال را با تشویق بلند نشان داد.

adj.

harsh

[hɑːʃ]

خشن، سخت



- ❖ When something is harsh, it is very unpleasant.
- The desert can be a very harsh environment.

➤ بیابان می تواند یک محیط خشن باشد.

v.

lean

[liːn]

تکیه دادن



- ❖ To lean is to bend the body in a particular direction.
- The woman leaned against the counter because she was tired.
- آن زن به دلیل خستگی به پیشخوان تکیه داد.



adv.

meantime

['mi:ntaim]

در این مدت، در این فاصله



❖ The meantime is the time between two events.

➤ Ted began setting the table. In the meantime, I began preparing the food.

➤ تد چیدن میز را شروع کرد و در این فاصله من غذا را آماده کردم.

n.

mischief

['mɪʃɪf]

شیطنت، شرارت، بازیگوشی



❖ mischief is behavior that is meant to trick or cause trouble for people.

➤ Ben was up to mischief when he persuaded Ken to paint his face.

➤ بن زمانی که کن را راضی به کشیدن صورتش کرد، شروع به شیطنت کرد.

n.

muscle

['mʌsl]

ماهیچه، عضله



❖ muscle is a mass of tissue attached to bone that helps you move.

➤ She went to the gym in order to make her muscles stronger.

➤ او برای قوی تر کردن عضلاتش به باشگاه رفت.

v.

rescue

['reskju:]

نجات دادن



❖ To rescue someone means to remove them from danger.

➤ The firefighter rescued the man from the burning building.

➤ آتش نشان، مرد را از ساختمان در حال سوختن نجات داد.



n.

succession

[sək'seɪ(ə)n]

سلسله، توالی



- ❖ A succession is a number of things that follow one after the other.
- The student said the letters of the alphabet in succession.
- دانش آموز حروف الفبا را به طور متوالی گفت.

n.

terrain

[tə'reɪn]

زمین، ناحیه



- ❖ The terrain is the land and all of its physical features or parts.
- The terrain below was rocky and full of hills.
- زمین زیر پر از صخره و تپه بود.

adj.

timid

['tɪmɪd]

ترسو، خجالتی، کمرو



- ❖ If someone is timid, they are afraid, shy, or nervous.
- The timid child hides behind her mother whenever she sees a stranger.
- بچه ی ترسو هر وقت یک غریبه را می بیند، پشت مادرش پنهان می شود.

n.

violence

['vaɪələ(ə)n(t)s]

خشونت، آشوب



- ❖ violence is forceful action that is meant to injure or kill people.
- The boy hit his brother in an act of violence.

➤ پسر با خشم برادرش را زد.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. muscle / violence

It was bad that the man had a lot of _____ because he used it to cause _____.

2. belly / bid

He had a _____ to win the race, but he had to quit when he got a bad pain in his _____.

3. disrespect / timid

The boy was always _____ because his classmates were mean and treated him with _____.

4. continent / enthusiasm

The boy had a lot of _____ before his trip to Europe. He had never been to a different _____ before.

5. lean / meantime

The movie will start soon. In the _____, help me to _____ these heavy boards against the wall.

6. alternative / avenue

The _____ that the man wanted to drive on was blocked, so he found an _____ route.

7. conflict / rescue

The police officer had to _____ the woman from a bad _____ she had with another woman.

8. harsh / terrain

The girl walked along the rough beach. The rocky _____ was _____ on her feet.

9. mischief / succession

The boys were up to their usual _____ and were throwing balls of paper at each other in _____.

10. current / blow

I turned on the fan so that it would _____ air on me. The _____ of cool air felt wonderful.

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Australia is an island that is also the smallest large area of land on the planet.

2. The land's feature was quite hilly.

3. The pitcher threw the balls to home plate in a series, one after another.

4. The student left for school early. She had to walk down an extended road to get there.

5. Brian was tired. He needed to bend over and rest on the side of his car.

6. The student decided that the answer was A and not the other choice, B.

7. The river's fast steady movement of water made it difficult to swim to the other side.

8. He talked about US history, and the pupils wrote notes in the time during the event.

9. The dog continued barking. The loud noise was painful and rough to her ears.

10. The boys used forceful action to get what they wanted.

Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which word best describes a student who is very happy and excited?
a. Enthusiasm b. Violence c. Current d. Alternative
2. Which of the following describes a scared person best?
a. Timid b. Disrespect c. Muscle d. Succession
3. What is something that can be soft and round?
a. Something in the meantime b. An avenue
c. A person's belly d. A continent
4. Which word best describes behavior meant to trick or cause trouble?
a. Mischief b. Conflict c. Terrain d. Harsh
5. Which of the following best describes the action of the wind?
a. It bids. b. It rescues. c. It blows. d. It leans.

The Sun and the North Wind

The Sun and the North Wind were talking to each other in the sky. The North Wind was saying that he was better than everyone else. The Sun listened as the North Wind talked with **enthusiasm** about how powerful he was and how he could push something from one **continent** to another with one breath. He said, "I am the strongest thing in the sky."

"Really?" asked the Sun. "How do you know that you are more powerful than the stars, or the rain, or even me?"

The North Wind laughed with **disrespect**. He yelled, "You? That's a joke!"

This hurt the Sun. He was usually **timid** and did not want to cause **conflict**. Today he decided that he should teach the North Wind a lesson.

In the **meantime**, a man began walking along the **avenue** down on Earth. When the Sun looked down on the **terrain** below, he saw the man. He pointed down to the Earth and said, "Do you see that man walking below? I bet I can get his jacket off of him. Can you?"

"Of course!" the North Wind replied as he took a deep breath and filled his lungs with air. He used all of his **muscles** in his face and **belly** to **blow** winds at his target in **succession**.

The **harsh** air **currents** made the man cold. The man pulled his jacket more tightly around him. It did not come off. The Sun decided to **rescue** the man from the **mischief** of the North Wind. He said, "May I try?" Then he sent down sunlight that made the man warm. The man **leaned** against a tree. He took off his jacket and enjoyed the nice weather.

"You are very powerful," the Sun said to the North Wind, "but you use **violence** in your **bid** to appear strong. You should think of an **alternative**. The strongest people don't use force to get what they want."



خورشید و باد شمالی

خورشید و باد شمالی در آسمان با هم حرف می‌زدند. باد شمالی می‌گفت که از همه بهتر است. خورشید با شور و شوق در مورد اینکه باد چقدر قدرتمند بوده و چگونه می‌تواند چیزی را از یک قاره به قاره ای دیگر تنها با یک نفس جابجا کند، گوش فرا داد.

او گفت: " من قوی‌ترین موجود در آسمان هستم. " خورشید پرسید: " چطور می‌دانی که تو از ستاره‌ها، یا باران، یا حتی من قدرتمندتر هستی؟ " باد شمالی با بی‌احترامی خندید و فریاد زد: " تو؟ این یک شوخی است! " این حرفش به خورشید صدمه می‌زد. او معمولاً خجالتی بود و نمی‌خواست که موجب درگیری شود. امروز او به این نتیجه رسید که باید درسی به باد شمالی بدهد.

در همین حال، مردی شروع به قدم زدن در طول خیابان روی زمین کرد. وقتی خورشید در پایین به زمین نگاه کرد، مرد را دید. او به زمین اشاره کرد و گفت: " آیا آن مرد را می‌بینی که در پایین راه می‌رود؟ شرط می‌بندم که می‌توانم کت او را از تنش در بیاورم. می‌توانی؟ " باد شمالی پاسخ داد " البته! " سپس نفس عمیقی کشید و ریه‌هایش را با هوا پر کرد. او تمام عضلات صورت و شکم خود برای ضربه زدن موفقیت‌آمیز به هدفش استفاده کرد.

جریان‌های شدید هوا مرد را سرد کرد. مرد کت خود را محکم‌تر دور خود کشید. این اتفاق نیفتاد. خورشید نیز تصمیم گرفت که آن مرد را از شر باد شمالی نجات دهد. گفت: " می‌توانم من هم امتحان کنم؟ " سپس نور خورشید را پایین فرستاد که مرد را گرم می‌کرد. مرد به درختی تکیه داد. کتتش را برداشت و از هوای خوب لذت برد.

خورشید خطاب به باد شمالی گفت: " تو خیلی قدرتمند هستی، اما از خشونت برای بیان درخواستت استفاده می‌کنی تا قوی به نظر برسی. باید به یک جایگزین فکر کنی.

قوی‌ترین افراد از زور برای رسیدن به آنچه می‌خواهند استفاده نمی‌کنند."

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The North Wind thought that he was stronger than everyone else.

2. ___ The North Wind blew the jacket off of the man.

3. ___ The North Wind treated the Sun with disrespect.

4. ___ The Sun was the target for the North Wind.

5. ___ The Sun was timid and did not teach the North Wind a lesson.

6. ___ The North Wind used violence in his bid to be powerful.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why was the North Wind so full of enthusiasm?
 - a. He thought he was all-powerful.
 - b. He was very rich.
 - c. He was the people's favorite.
 - d. He was going on a date.
2. Why did the North Wind fill his lungs with air?
 - a. To avoid conflict
 - b. To find an alternative to violence
 - c. To help his muscles
 - d. To blow air at his target
3. How was the North Wind causing mischief?
 - a. By hurting the Sun
 - b. By leaning on a tree
 - c. By blowing harsh wind at the man
 - d. By walking along the terrain
4. What happened in the meantime while the Sun and the North Wind were talking?
 - a. The man started to laugh.
 - b. The man felt the cold air currents.
 - c. The man took off his jacket.
 - d. The man began walking along the avenue.



v.

affect

[ə'fekt]

تحت تاثیر قرار دادن، اثر گذاشتن



- ❖ To affect someone or something is to have an influence over them.
- The student's poor attitude affected the other students in the class.
- رفتار ضعیف دانش آموزان، سایر دانش آموزان را نیز تحت تاثیر قرار داد.

n.

autograph

['ɔ:təgrɑ:f]

امضا



- ❖ An autograph is the written name of a famous person.
- Everybody wanted the movie star's autograph.
- هر کسی امضای ستاره های فیلم را خواست.

n.

bead

[bi:d]

قطره



- ❖ A bead is a drop of liquid.
- beads of water collected outside the glass.
- قطره های آب روی شیشه جمع شد.

v.

brew

[bru:]

دم کردن



- ❖ To brew coffee or tea means to pour hot water over it.
- Please brew a fresh pot of coffee.
- لطفا یک قوری قهوه دم کنید.

v.

charm

[tʃɑ:m]

شیفته کردن، دل ربودن، مسحور کردن

- ❖ To charm someone is to please them with your personality.
- Gail charmed everyone with her humorous stories.

➤ گیل با داستان های خنده دارش هر کسی را جذب کرد.



n.

destiny

['destɪni]

سرنوشت، تقدیر

- ❖ A destiny is all the things that happen or will happen to a person in their life.
- It was his destiny to become a great singer.

➤ سرنوشت او، تبدیل او به یک خواننده ی قوی بود.



n.

horn

[hɔ:n]

بوق

- ❖ A horn is a device that makes a loud noise.
- The boy honked his horn while he rode his bicycle past the house.
- پسرک حین رد شدن از خانه، بوق دوچرخه اش را به صدا در آورد.



adj.

irritable

['ɪrɪtəbl]

تندخو، عصبی، بدخلق

- ❖ When someone is irritable, they become annoyed or angry very easily.
- She is irritable when she doesn't get enough sleep.

➤ زمانی که خواب کافی نداشته باشد، بسیار بدخلق است.



v.

lag

[læɡ]

عقب بودن، عقب افتادن



- ❖ To lag behind is to move slowly behind other moving objects.
- The girl on rollerblades lagged behind the little girl on the bicycle.
- دختری که اسکیت سواری می کرد از دختر دوچرخه سوار جا ماند.

v.

maximize

['mæksɪmaɪz]

به حداکثر رساندن، بیشین کردن



- ❖ To maximize something means to make it the biggest in size or amount.
- Businesses try to maximize their profits.
- تجارت ها برای به حداکثر رساندن سودشان تلاش می کنند.

n.

nightmare

['naɪtmeə]

کابوس، خواب بد



- ❖ A nightmare is a bad or scary dream.
- The girl was scared to go back to sleep because she had a nightmare.
- آن دختر به دلیل دیدن کابوس، می ترسید به خواب برود.

adj.

nutritious

[nju:'trɪʃəs]

مقوی، مغذی



- ❖ When something is nutritious, it helps the body stay healthy.
- Mangoes are one of the most nutritious fruits in the world.
- انبه یکی از مغذی ترین میوه ها در جهان است.



n.

protein

['prəʊti:n]

پروتئین



- ❖ protein is a substance that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong.
- Fish and beef are good sources of protein.

➤ ماهی و گوشت گوساله یکی از بهترین منابع پروتئین می باشند.

n.

signature

['sɪɡnəʃə]

امضا



- ❖ A signature is your name that you have written in your own way.
- I put my signature at the end of the letter.

➤ در پایان نامه آن امضا کردم.

n.

stuff

[stʌf]

اثاث (اثاثیه)، چیز (چیزها)



- ❖ stuff is a word used to refer to things without mentioning the things by name.
- We gave a lot of stuff to the charity.

➤ چیزهای زیادی به خیریه اهدا کردیم.

adj.

subconscious

[sʌb'kɒn(t)ʃəs]

ناخودآگاه، غیر ارادی



- ❖ When something is subconscious, it is done without thinking about it.
- Breathing is one of the subconscious things that the body does.

➤ تنفس یکی از کارهایی است که هر کس به صورت ناخودآگاه انجام می دهد.



n.

van

[væn]

ون



- ❖ A van is a vehicle that is used for carrying things but is smaller than a truck.
- The delivery company uses large vans to deliver packages.
- شرکت حمل و نقل برای حمل بسته ها از ون های بزرگ استفاده می کند.

v.

warn

[wɔ:n]

هشدار دادن، اطلاع دادن



- ❖ To warn someone is to make them know of possible danger in the future.
- The lifeguard warned people to stay away from the rough ocean.
- نجات غریق به مردم هشدار داد که از اقیانوس فاصله بگیرند.

n.

workout

['wɜ:kaut]

ورزش، تمرین



- ❖ A workout is an exercise routine that helps improve health.
- She doesn't do her workout on the weekends.
- او در روز تعطیل ورزش نمی کند.

v.

zoom

[zu:m]

سریع حرکت کردن



- ❖ To zoom is to move quickly.
- The cars zoomed along the road.
- ماشین ها در سراسر جاده به سرعت حرکت کردند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. irritable
a. to please b. to get angry easily c. having a routine d. healthy
2. zoom
a. to move quickly b. dangerous c. healthy d. to attract
3. subconscious
a. not aware b. handwritten c. bad dream d. pleasing
4. charm
a. to please b. to make a noise c. to exercise d. to influence
5. brew
a. to make coffee b. to move slowly c. to have a routine d. to attract

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Mary asked for the singer's handwritten name.

2. He isn't allowed to watch scary movies because they give him bad dreams.

3. Push everything to one side to make the most of the space of the gymnasium.

4. He borrowed a truck-like vehicle to help him move some of his furniture.

5. Ellen wanted to get to the gym and try a new exercise routine.

6. Harriet doesn't like talking to Jesse when he's easily annoyed.

7. The cars honked their devices for making noises while they waited in traffic.

8. If you don't start trying harder, you will move slowly far behind the rest of us.

9. The sign makes aware of bears in the area.

10. Mother cooks me a healthy breakfast every morning.

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. This is a good source of protein?
 - a. Vegetables
 - b. Tea
 - c. Beef
 - d. Sugar

2. Stuff can be best described as what?
 - a. Sports equipment
 - b. A collection of unnamed things
 - c. A computer
 - d. Socks and shoes

3. What is the most nutritious snack below?
 - a. An apple
 - b. French fries
 - c. A candy bar
 - d. Ice cream

4. What is something you might put your signature on?
 - a. A business letter
 - b. A birthday cake
 - c. Your hand
 - d. The water

5. If you lag behind your friends, you _____.
 - a. are slower than them
 - b. are heavier than them
 - c. wait for them
 - d. don't care about them

6. What are things that happen and will happen in a person's life?
 - a. Their workout
 - b. Their destiny
 - c. Their stuff
 - d. Their autograph

7. Which of the following is similar to a small truck?
 - a. A van
 - b. A horn
 - c. A charm
 - d. A lag

8. What is a small drop of water called?
 - a. Bead
 - b. Signature
 - c. Protein
 - d. Nutritious

9. What does it mean to have influence over something?
 - a. To charm
 - b. To maximize
 - c. To brew
 - d. To affect

10. What are fire alarms meant to do?
 - a. Make people irritable
 - b. Give children nightmares
 - c. Warn people
 - d. Zoom past people

The Big Race

Alex woke up scared because of a **nightmare**. In it, he was running a race. Just before he reached the finish line, he fell. Alex thought that it was a **subconscious** way that his brain was trying to **warn** him about something. He was going to run in a race that day. Did the dream mean he was going to lose? He became **irritable**.

“Good morning,” said Alex’s mother. “I **brewed** some coffee and made you a special breakfast.” Alex didn’t want it. It had too much sugar. He needed something **nutritious**. So he prepared a meal that contained a lot of **protein** to **maximize** his energy for the race. Then his father asked, “Do you want help packing your **stuff**?” “No,” replied Alex. He wanted to make sure that he had all of his equipment for the race.

Alex’s family got in their **van** and drove to the track. When they arrived, a boy ran toward Alex. “Can I have your **autograph**?” asked the boy. Alex had many fans. He usually **charmed** everybody he spoke to. However, today Alex refused to give the boy his **signature**. He needed to think about his race.

He took his jump rope from his **bag** and started his usual **workout**. Maybe exercising would help him forget about the nightmare. “The race is about to start,” said the coach. **Beads** of sweat formed out of Alex’s sweat glands. All he could think about was his terrible dream. He thought it might be his **destiny** to become a loser. While he was thinking, he didn’t hear the **horn** that meant the race had started.

The runners **zoomed** toward the finish line. By the time Alex started, he **lagged** far behind everyone. He couldn’t run fast enough to catch up to the others. He had lost the race! He shouldn’t have let the nightmare **affect** him. He should have stayed focused on the race.



مسابقه بزرگ

الکس به خاطر کابوس در حالی که ترسیده بود از خواب بیدار شد. در آن کابوس، او در حال دویدن بود. درست قبل از اینکه به خط پایان برسد، افتاد. الکس فکر کرد این یک روش ناخودآگاه است که مغزش سعی دارد به او در مورد چیزی هشدار دهد.

آن روز در مسابقه‌ای شرکت می‌کرد. آیا رویای خود را از دست می‌داد؟ خشمگین شد. مادر الکس گفت: "صبح بخیر. من قهوه درست کردم و یک صبحانه مخصوص برایت آوردم." الکس اصلاً نمی‌خواست. شکر زیادی داشت.

او به چیزی مغذی نیاز داشت. بنابراین او غذایی آماده کرد که حاوی مقدار زیادی پروتئین برای به حداکثر رساندن انرژی اش برای مسابقه بود. سپس پدرش پرسید: "آیا می‌خواهی وسائل خود را بسته‌بندی کنی؟" الکس جواب داد نه. می‌خواست مطمئن شود که تمام تجهیزات خود را برای مسابقه دارد.

خانواده الکس در ون جمع شدند و به جاده رفتند. وقتی رسیدند پسری به طرف الکس دوید. پسر پرسید: "آیا می‌توانم یک امضا بگیرم؟" الکس طرفداران زیادی داشت. او معمولاً همه را مجذوب خودش می‌کرد. با این حال، امروز الکس از دادن امضای خود امتناع کرد. باید درباره مسابقه خود فکر می‌کرد.

طناب را از کیفش درآورد و شروع به ورزش کرد. شاید تمرین به او کمک می‌کرد تا کابوس را فراموش کند. مربی گفت: "این مسابقه در شرف آغاز است." دانه‌های عرق از غدد عرق الکس به بیرون تراوش می‌کرد. تنها چیزی که می‌توانست به آن فکر کند رویای وحشتناکش بود. فکر می‌کرد سرنوشتش می‌تواند بازنده شود.

در حالی که داشت فکر می‌کرد، صدای بوق شروع مسابقه را شنید. دوندگان، سریع به طرف خط پایان حرکت کردند. وقتی الکس به راه افتاد، از همه عقب افتاده بود. او نمی‌توانست به اندازه کافی سریع بدود تا به دیگران برسد. او مسابقه را از دست داده بود! نباید می‌گذاشت که کابوس بر او تاثیر بگذارد. باید روی این مسابقه تمرکز می‌کرد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Alex had a nightmare that he forgot his stuff at home.

2. ___ The dream made Alex irritable on the day of the race.

3. ___ Alex wanted to eat something with a lot of sugar for breakfast.

4. ___ Alex did a workout with his jump rope to help him feel less nervous.

5. ___ Beads of sweat formed out of Alex's sweat glands.

6. ___ Alex lagged behind while the other runners zoomed past him.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What did Alex think his destiny might be?
 - a. To become irritable
 - b. To become a loser
 - c. To maximize energy
 - d. To have nightmares
2. What did Alex's father offer to help him do?
 - a. Clean the beads of sweat
 - b. Charm the fans for him
 - c. Pack his stuff
 - d. Brew some coffee
3. What did the boy at the track ask Alex for?
 - a. His protein
 - b. His autograph
 - c. His prize
 - d. His bag
4. What was Alex so affected by that he lost the race?
 - a. His nightmare
 - b. His nutritious meal
 - c. The horn
 - d. His signature

n.

brick

[brɪk]

آجر



- ❖ A brick is a block of hard clay that is used for building things, such as walls.
- There were several bricks scattered on the ground.

➤ آجرهای زیادی روی زمین پراکنده شده بود.

v.

crumble

['krʌmbl]

فرو ریختن، تکه تکه شدن



- ❖ To crumble means to break or fall apart into small pieces.
- The old house's walls crumbled into a pile of rock and wood.

➤ دیوار خانه ی قدیمی به تکه های سنگ و چوب تبدیل شد.

n.

dough

[dəʊ]

خمیر



- ❖ dough is a mixture of flour and water that becomes bread when baked.
- I made heart-shaped cookies from the dough.

➤ با خمیر بیسکویت های شکل قلب درست کردم.

v.

express

[ɪk'spres]

بیان کردن، اظهار کردن، ابراز کردن



- ❖ To express a feeling or idea means to show others how one thinks or feels.
- The nurse expressed her sympathy for the sick patient.

➤ پرستار با بیمار همدردی کرد.



n.

fist

[fɪst]

مشت

- ❖ A fist is a hand with fingers bent in toward the palm.
- The bully made a fist and threatened to hit the small boy.
- مرد قلدر دستانش را مشت کرد و پسر کوچک را تهدید به کتک کرد.



adj.

flexible

['fleksəbl]

انعطاف پذیر

- ❖ If something is flexible, then it can bend easily without breaking.
- The tree branch was so flexible it could be bent into a circle and not break.
- شاخه ی درخت به حدی انعطاف پذیر بود که آن را به شکل دایره خم کردیم و نشکست.



v.

flush

[flʌʃ]

سرخ شدن

- ❖ To flush means the face becomes red due to heat, illness, or emotion.
- After the long race, the runner's face was flushed.
- بعد از یک مسابقه ی طولانی، صورت دونده ها سرخ شده بود.



v.

injure

['ɪndʒə]

زخمی کردن، صدمه زدن

- ❖ To injure someone means to damage a part of their body.
- The car crash injured two people.
- تصاف ماشین ها، دو نفر را زخمی کرد.

n.

lump

[lʌmp]

تکه، قطعه



- ❖ A lump is a small piece of something that is solid.
- The artist took a lump of clay and turned it into a beautiful pot.
- هنرمند تکه ای گل را برداشت و آن را تبدیل به یک گلدان زیبا کرد.

n.

mixture

['mɪkstʃə]

مخلوط، ترکیب



- ❖ A mixture is something that is made by mixing other things together.
- The walls were built using a mixture of water, rock, and dirt.
- دیوارها از مخلوط سنگ، آب و خاک ساخته شده بودند.

v.

reconcile

['rek(ə)nsaɪl]

آشتی کردن



- ❖ To reconcile means to return to a friendly relationship.
- After arguing, the two friends were reconciled with each other.
- پس از بحث، دو دوست با یکدیگر آشتی کردند.

v.

ruin

['ru:ɪn]

خراب کردن، از بین بردن



- ❖ To ruin something means to harm or damage it greatly.
- Our walk in the park was ruined by the sudden rain.
- پیاده روی ما در پارک، با باران ناگهانی خراب شد.

v.

shatter

['ʃætə]

خرد شدن، شکستن



❖ To shatter something means to break it suddenly into many tiny pieces.

➤ When the ball hit the window, the glass shattered.

➤ وقتی که توپ به پنجره خورد، شیشه شکست.

n.

shutter

['ʃʌtə]

پرده کرکهای



❖ shutters are wooden or metal covers in front of a window.

➤ Mr. Smith closed the shutters every night to make his bedroom dark.

➤ آقای اسمیت هر شب برای تاریک کردن اتاق خواب، پرده را می کشید.

v.

sift

[sɪft]

الک کردن، از صافی گذراندن



❖ To sift something means to remove all the large pieces.

➤ The baker sifted the flour into a large bowl.

➤ نانوا آرد را در یک کاسه ی بزرگ الک کرد.

adj.

slight

[slɑɪt]

ناچیز، کوچک



❖ If something is slight, then it is small or minor.

➤ There was only a slight change in the little boy's height.

➤ تنها یک تغییر جزئی در قد پسرک ایجاد شده بود.

v.

sparkle

['spa:kl]

درخشیدن، برق زدن



❖ To sparkle means to shine brightly with quick flashes of light.

➤ The stars sparkled in the winter night's sky.

➤ ستاره ها در آسمان شب زمستانی درخشیدند.

v.

sprinkle

['sprɪŋkl]

پاشیدن



❖ To sprinkle means to scatter something all over something else.

➤ He sprinkled the pasta with salt and black pepper.

➤ او بر روی پاستا نمک و فلفل پاشید.

adj.

stale

[steɪl]

بیات، مانده، کهنه



❖ If food is stale, then it is not fresh but dry, hard, and not good to eat.

➤ The cookies sat on the table so long that they became stale.

➤ بیسکوییت ها مدت طولانی روی میز مانده بود و بیات شده بود.

v.

utter

['ʌtə]

به زبان آوردن، گفتن، ادا کردن



❖ To utter a word or a sound means to say it.

➤ The lost boy was so scared that he could barely utter a single word.

➤ پسر گمشده به حدی ترسیده بود که به سختی یک کلمه را به زبان آورد.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. ruin
a. to damage
b. to hate
c. to fly
d. to cook
2. brick
a. a fast car
b. a hard piece of clay
c. a best friend
d. a favorite kind of toy
3. sprinkle
a. to scatter
b. to create
c. to mend
d. to agree
4. injure
a. to run
b. to fall
c. to hurt
d. to roast
5. slight
a. growing
b. minor
c. quick
d. risky

Exercise 2

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. How would a man show others an emotion?
a. By flushing it
b. By injuring it
c. By ruining it
d. By expressing it
2. Which of the following says that two former enemies become friends again?
a. To reconcile
b. To shatter
c. To utter
d. To sparkle
3. How would you describe a girl who can stretch her leg behind her head?
a. A little bit stale
b. Very flexible
c. More than slight
d. Ready to crumble
4. Which of these would you use to make bread?
a. A brick
b. Some dough
c. A fist
d. A lump
5. Which word describes something usually found on windows?
a. Mixture
b. Crumble
c. Slight
d. Shutters

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.**1. brick / lump**

Before the project, the clay was one big _____. But when he was finished, he made a perfectly square _____.

2. reconciled / uttering

Five minutes ago, the two senators were _____ insults at each other, but now they have _____ because they both agree with the new law.

3. shutters / sparkled

In the middle of the night, she got out of bed and opened the _____. She gazed at the sky where the stars _____ like tiny fires.

4. flushed / stale

The rice was not eaten soon enough, so it tasted _____. It made me feel sick and my face became _____.

5. crumbled / dough

The cook picked up the block of cheese and _____ it into little pieces. Then he mixed them with the _____ before placing it in the oven.

6. sift / shattered

When he started to _____ the flour into the bowl, he slipped and dropped it. The bowl hit the ground and _____.

7. fist / flexible

He hit the punching bag with his _____. Since the bag was _____, it did not break.

8. sprinkle / mixture

The _____ of ice cream and chocolate tastes good, but it will be even better if you _____ sugar on the top of it.

9. slight / expressed

The doctor _____ a lot of concern for my hurt ankle, but I told him the pain was only _____.

10. ruined / injured

The ship was _____ when it crashed into the island. Even though it was greatly damaged, none of the passengers were _____.

The Brothers and the Bread

Two brothers wanted to go outside and play. However, because the only bread in the house was **stale**, their mother told them they needed to bake fresh bread.

"I have to have the car repaired," she said. "When I return, if the bread is ready, you can play."

The brothers hurried to prepare the bread, but not carefully. They didn't **sift** the flour. They were careless and **sprinkled** too much salt into the **mixture**. The **dough** needed to be soft and **flexible**, but the salt made it into a **lump** that was as hard as a **brick**.

The younger brother **uttered** a sigh. "Now we have to start again," he said.

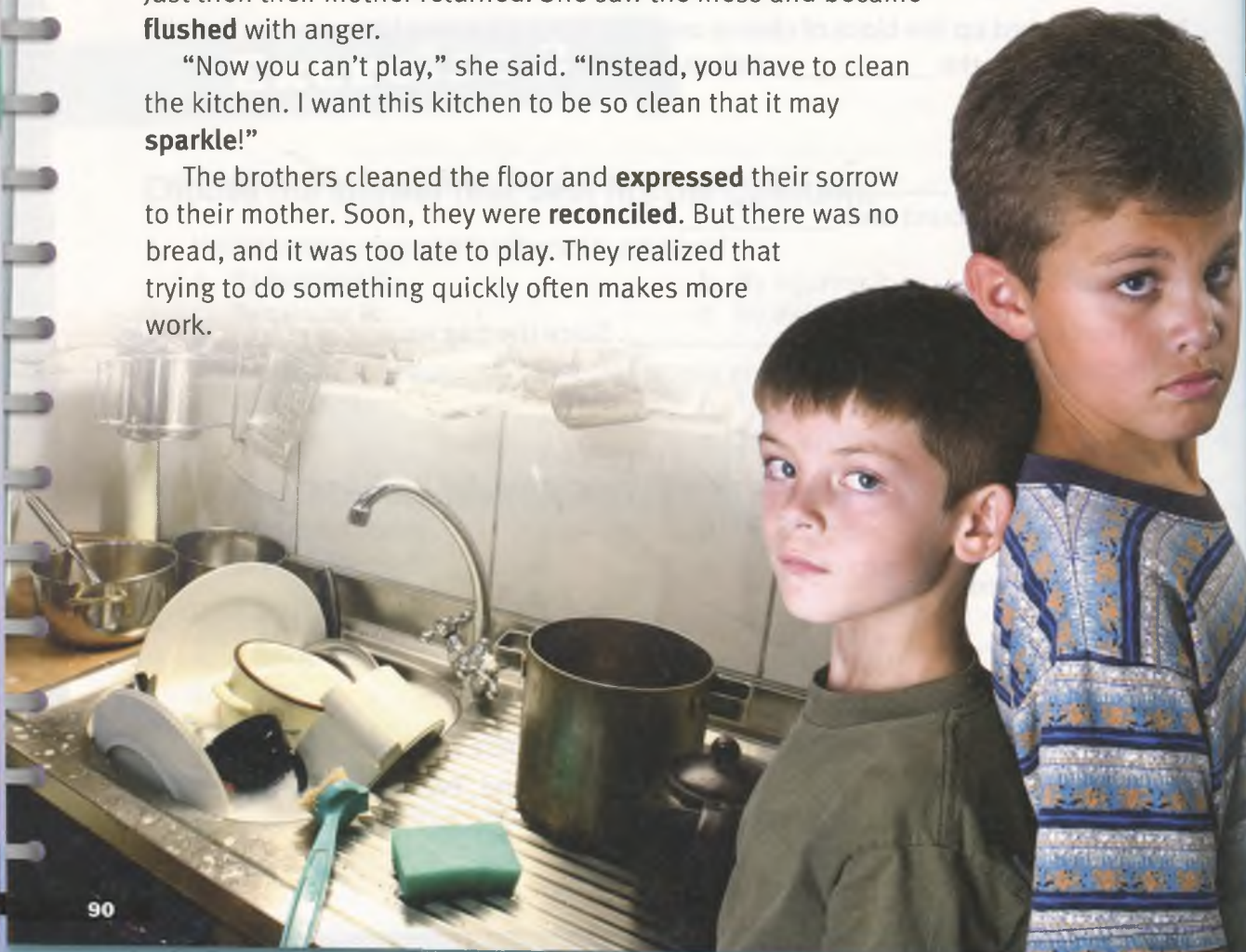
"No, we don't," the older brother replied. "I'll fix it. I just need to make the dough flat again and add water to it."

He decided to hit the ball of dough with his **fist** to make it flat. But he hit it so hard that it flew right off of the table and knocked over a glass, which **shattered**. The dough then crashed into the kitchen window's **shutters** and **crumbled**. Luckily, the brothers were not **injured**, but they did make a huge mess.

A **slight** mistake now became a major problem. The brothers had **ruined** the kitchen. Just then their mother returned. She saw the mess and became **flushed** with anger.

"Now you can't play," she said. "Instead, you have to clean the kitchen. I want this kitchen to be so clean that it may **sparkle!**"

The brothers cleaned the floor and **expressed** their sorrow to their mother. Soon, they were **reconciled**. But there was no bread, and it was too late to play. They realized that trying to do something quickly often makes more work.



دو برادر و قرص نان

دو برادر می‌خواستند بیرون بروند و بازی کنند. با این همه چون تنها نان موجود در خانه مانده بود، مادرشان به آن‌ها گفت که باید نان تازه بپزند. او گفت: " من باید ماشین تعمیر کنم. وقتی بازگشتم، اگر نان آماده باشد، می‌توانید بازی کنید." برادران برای آماده کردن نان عجله کردند اما نه به دقت. آن‌ها آرد را واری نکرده بودند.

بیش از حد به مخلوط نمک می‌پاشیدند. خمیر باید نرم و انعطاف‌پذیر باشد، اما نمک آن را به یک تکه سنگ تبدیل کرد که به سختی آجر بود. برادر کوچک‌تر آهی کشید. او گفت: " اکنون باید دوباره شروع کنیم." برادر بزرگ‌تر جواب داد: " نه." " من درستش می‌کنم."

فقط باید خمیر را دوباره صاف کنم و به آن آب اضافه کنم. او تصمیم گرفت با مشت به خمیر ضربه بزند تا آن را هموار کند. اما چنان محکم به آن کوبید که درست از روی میز پرید و به یک لیوان خورد که خرد شد. خمیر بعد به پنجره آشپزخانه خورد و فرو ریخت. خوشبختانه، این دو برادر زخمی نشدند، اما یک دردرس عظیم ایجاد کردند.

یک اشتباه جزئی تبدیل به یک مشکل بزرگ شد. برادرها آشپزخانه را خراب کرده بودند. سپس مادرشان بازگشت. او آشفتگی را دید و از خشم سرخ شد. او گفت: " حالا نمی‌توانید بازی کنید. در عوض باید آشپزخانه را تمیز کنید."

می‌خواهم این آشپزخانه آنقدر تمیز باشد که بدرخشد!" برادران کف اتاق را تمیز کردند و اندوه خود را به مادرشان اعلام کردند. به زودی آشتی کردند. اما هیچ نانی وجود نداشت. آن‌ها متوجه شدند که تلاش برای انجام کاری سریع‌تر، کار بیشتری می‌برد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Because the bread was stale, the mother wanted them to bake fresh bread.

2. ___ The dough became a lump that was as hard as a brick.

3. ___ The bread needed to be hard and sturdy.

4. ___ The older brother uttered a sigh.

5. ___ The brothers had to clean the kitchen, so it may sparkle.

6. ___ A major mistake only caused a slight problem.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What made the dough into a hard lump?

- a. Not putting in enough water
- b. Using too much salt
- c. Expressing sadness
- d. Not sifting the flour

2. What happened when the older brother hit the dough with his fist?

- a. The dough hit the shutters.
- b. A glass shattered.
- c. The brothers were injured.
- d. The dough crumbled.

3. Why was the mother flushed with anger?

- a. The dough was hard.
- b. The kitchen was ruined.
- c. The brothers sighed.
- d. The repair shop was closed.

4. When were the brothers reconciled with their mother?

- a. As she made fresh bread
- b. When she returned from the store
- c. Before she left the house
- d. After they cleaned the kitchen



conj.

although

[ə'lðəu]

اگرچه، با اینکه، با وجود اینکه



- ❖ You use **although** to say that one thing is contrasted by another.
- although she was late, her friends gave her a warm welcome.
- اگرچه دیر کرده بود، دوستانش به گرمی از او استقبال کردند.

v.

apply

[ə'plai]

اعمال کردن، به کار بردن، استفاده کردن



- ❖ To **apply** something means to put it on.
- She always applies makeup to her face before going outside.
- او همیشه قبل از بیرون رفتن آرایش می کند.

v.

await

[ə'weɪt]

منتظر بودن، صبر کردن



- ❖ To **await** something means to wait for it.
- The players awaited the judge's decision.
- بازیکنان منتظر تصمیم هیئت ژوری ماندند.

adj.

beloved

[bi'lʌvd]

عزیز، گرامی، محبوب



- ❖ When something is **beloved**, it is very special and you like it very much.
- The boy took a nap next to his beloved cat.
- پسر در کنار گربه ی عزیزش چرت زد.

v.

bury

['beri]

به خاک سپردن، دفن کردن



- ❖ To bury someone or something means to put them in the ground.
- They buried their grandfather under his favorite tree after he died.
- آن ها پس از مرگ پدر بزرگش، او را زیر درخت دوست داشتنی اش دفن کردند.

n.

climate

['klaɪmət]

آب و هوا، اقلیم



- ❖ A climate is the usual weather in a place.
- The climate in the desert is very hot.
- آب و هوای بیابان بسیار گرم است.

v.

complain

[kəm'pleɪn]

شکایت کردن، اعتراض کردن



- ❖ When you complain, you say that you are unhappy about something.
- The workers complained that they were being treated unfairly.
- کارکنان به این که چرا با آن ها نا عادلانه رفتار می شد، اعتراض کردند.

v.

confuse

[kən'fju:z]

گیج کردن، پریشان کردن



- ❖ To confuse someone means to make them feel like they are unsure.
- The sign confused the traveler because it pointed in two directions.
- به دلیل اینکه علامت به دو جهت اشاره داشت، مسافران را گیج کرد.



adj.

due

[dju:]

موعد، سر رسید

- ❖ When something is due, it is expected to happen or be done at that time.
- The papers were due on the 19th.

➤ موعد مقاله ها 19 هم بود.



adj.

entire

[in'taɪə]

تمام، کل، همه

- ❖ When you talk about an entire thing, you are talking about the whole thing.
- He was so hungry that he ate the entire pizza by himself.

➤ او آن قدر گرسنه بود که همه ی پیتزا را تنهایی خورد.



v.

establish

[is'tæblɪʃ]

تاسیس کردن، بنا کردن، احداث کردن

- ❖ To establish something means to create it.
- He wanted to establish a club for people to help the Earth.

➤ او خواست که کلویی را برای کمک مردم به کره ی زمین بنا کند.



n.

furnace

['fɜ:nɪs]

کوره

- ❖ A furnace is a place where heat is made.
- Mr. Jones came to fix the furnace.

➤ آقای جون برای تعمیر کوره آمد.



n.

leash

[li:]

قلاده، افسار



- ❖ A leash is a rope or chain that is used to lead an animal.
- A lot of dogs must wear a leash to keep them from running away.
- برای جلوگیری از فرار بسیاری از سگ ها، باید به آن ها قلاده بست.

v.

mature

[mə'tʃuə]

به بلوغ رسیدن، بالغ شدن



- ❖ To mature means to grow up to become an adult.
- When they matured, they became as tall as their parents.
- وقتی که آن ها به بلوغ رسیدند، هم قد پدر و مادرشان شدند.

v.

measure

['meɪʒə]

اندازه گیری کردن، سنجیدن، اندازه گرفتن



- ❖ To measure something means to find out the quality, value, or effect of it.
- The scientists carefully measured the amount of chemicals in the tubes.
- دانشمندان مواد داخل لوله ها را به دقت اندازه گیری کردند.

n.

midst

[mɪdst]

میان، مرکز، وسط



- ❖ The midst of something is the middle of it.
- She was in the midst of cleaning when the telephone rang.
- زمانی که تلفن زنگ خورد، او اواسط تمیز کردن بود.

n.

misery

['mɪz(ə)rɪ]

فلاکت، بدبختی



❖ misery is extreme suffering.

➤ There was a lot of misery after Sam lost his dog.

➤ پس از این که سم سگش را گم کرد، فلاکت های بسیاری پیش آمد.

adj.

prior

['praɪə]

قبل، قبلی



❖ When something happened prior to something else, it happened earlier.

➤ Ron had to wait since he arrived prior to the scheduled meeting time.

➤ به دلیل اینکه ران زودتر از زمان جلسه رسیده بود، باید صبر می کرد.

n.

research

[rɪ'sɜːtʃ]

تحقیق، پژوهش



❖ research is close and careful study to discover new things.

➤ Scientists did a lot of research on the subject of blood type.

➤ دانشمندان تحقیقات بسیاری در مورد انواع گروه خونی انجام داده اند.

n.

variety

[və'reɪəti]

تنوع، گستره



❖ A variety of something is a group of many different kinds of it.

➤ There are a variety of flowers at the shop.

➤ در مغازه گل های متفاوتی وجود دارد.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.

1. research / await

After weeks of hard work, the scientists must _____ the results of their _____.

2. misery / beloved

After the death of her _____ pet, the woman felt nothing but _____ for many weeks.

3. complained / variety

The store had a _____ of canned vegetables, but the man _____ that they didn't have his favorite brand.

4. due / confused

The new schedule _____ passengers who thought the train was _____ at 8 a.m.

5. climate / establish

The island was a great place to _____ a hotel since the _____ was warm throughout the year.

6. although / prior

_____ he had a lot of bad luck in the past, he refused to let _____ events stop him from moving forward.

7. furnace / entire

The _____ was turned up to the highest temperature, but it couldn't heat the _____ room.

8. mature / midst

In the _____ of a terrible war, the young boys had to _____ quickly.

9. measured / leash

To make sure the dog's _____ was long enough, Bob took out a ruler and _____ it.

10. buried / apply

She insisted that they _____ her mother's favorite perfume before they _____ her.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. Although he didn't know how to dance, _____.
2. A furnace keeps _____.
3. Florida's warm **climate** makes _____.
4. He wanted to **establish** _____.
5. The train was **due** to arrive at _____.
6. A lot of **research** is needed _____.
7. Shoppers have a **variety** of _____.
8. In the **midst** of the game _____.
9. A **leash** keeps _____.
10. Her **beloved** sister _____.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| a. he went to the party anyway | b. before new medicines can be created |
| c. a school for blind children | d. a room warm during the winter |
| e. a dog from running away | f. many travelers want to vacation there |
| g. always calmed her | h. the team's best player had to be replaced |
| i. around seven in the morning | j. food to choose from at the store |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. To determine if the new drug was safe, _____.
2. His newest book did not sell well, _____.
3. He wanted to finish the race, _____.
4. He lost his map, _____.
5. The soup was cold, _____.
6. Sue was very silly as a child, _____.
7. No one could find the treasure _____.
8. He said he would write to her, _____.
9. She wanted to look older, _____.
10. They were thirsty, _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. scientists measured all the effects | b. but his prior works were very successful |
| c. because the pirate had buried it | d. so she applied makeup to her face |
| e. but the pain in his ankle gave him too much misery | |
| f. so she patiently awaited his letters | g. so they drank the entire bowl of punch |
| h. so the diners complained to the waiter | |
| i. but she became more serious as she matured | |
| j. so he became confused | |

Laika, the Space Dog

One of the world's most **beloved** space travelers was also the furiest. Laika was a little dog living on the streets of Moscow, Russia. She **matured** on the streets because no one would give her a home. She had to learn how to live without eating much. She found ways to keep warm in a very cold **climate**. Scientists thought a tough dog like Laika would do well in a project they were putting together.

In a **prior** launch, Russia had put the first man-made object into space. Now, scientists wanted to see if a living thing could go to space. **Although** many facts about space had been learned, they weren't enough to help send humans to space safely.

Laika and two other dogs were chosen to help scientists with their **research**. The animals were used in a **variety** of tests. In the end, though, only Laika would go to space. On November 3, 1957 the Sputnik 2 spaceship was **due** to leave Earth.

Scientists carefully **applied** wires to Laika's skin to **measure** her body's reactions once she got into space. Laika also wore a special **leash**. Without it, she would float around in the spaceship. Soon after, Laika left the planet. Scientists on Earth **awaited** information from the ship.

But in the **midst** of so much excitement, something very sad happened. Scientists were able to tell that Laika was under a lot of stress. The trip **confused** and scared her. Laika's **entire** ship had become as hot as a **furnace**. Scientists were powerless to help the dog in her **misery**. After about five hours, Laika died.

Some have **complained** that the little dog should never have been used in the mission. Scientists knew that she would not survive the trip. Laika was never **buried**, but a memorial has been **established** in Moscow. There are many songs and books about her, too. It seems that Laika became a hero to many people.



لایکا، سگ فضایی

یکی از محبوب‌ترین مسافران فضایی جهان، یکی از پشمالوترین‌ها نیز بود. لایکا یک سگ کوچک بود که در خیابان‌های مسکو در روسیه زندگی می‌کرد. او در خیابان‌ها رشد کرد و به بلوغ رسید، چون هیچ‌کس به او خانه‌ای نمی‌داد.

او باید یاد می‌گرفت چطور بدون خوردن زیاد زندگی کند. او راه‌هایی برای گرم نگه داشتن خود در آب و هوای بسیار سرد پیدا کرد. دانشمندان فکر کردند که یک سگ سرسخت مانند لایکا در پروژه‌های که مشغول سرهم‌بندی آن بودند خوب عمل می‌کند. در یک پرتاب قبلی، روسیه اولین شی ساخته شده توسط انسان را به فضا فرستاده بود.

اکنون دانشمندان می‌خواستند ببینند که آیا یک موجود زنده می‌تواند به فضا برود یا نه. اگرچه بسیاری از واقعیات را در مورد فضا یاد گرفته بودند، اما این اطلاعات برای کمک به فرستادن انسان به فضا کافی نبود. لایکا و دو سگ دیگر برای کمک به دانشمندان در تحقیقات خود انتخاب شدند. حیوانات در آزمایش‌های گوناگون مورد استفاده قرار گرفتند.

با این وجود، در پایان، فقط لایکا به فضا رفت. در سوم نوامبر ۱۹۵۷، سفینه اسپوتنیک ۲ در آستانه ترک زمین بود. دانشمندان با دقت سیم‌هایی را به پوست لایکا وصل کردند تا واکنش‌های بدنش را زمانی که وارد فضا می‌شد اندازه‌گیری کنند. لایکا نیز یک قلابه مخصوص به گردن خود داشت. بدون آن، او در سفینه شناور می‌شد.

اندکی پس از آن لایکا این سیاره را ترک کرد. دانشمندان روی زمین منتظر ارسال اطلاعات از سفینه بودند. اما در بحبوحه این همه هیجان، چیزی بسیار غم‌انگیز اتفاق افتاد. دانشمندان توانستند تشخیص دهند که لایکا زیر فشار روانی زیادی قرار دارد. این سفر او را گیج کرده و ترسانده بود. تمام سفینه لایکا به اندازه یک کوره گرم شده بود. دانشمندان قادر به کمک به سگ در حل این بدبختی نبودند.

پس از حدود پنج ساعت لایکا درگذشت. برخی شکایت دارند که سگ کوچک هرگز نباید در این مأموریت مورد استفاده قرار می‌گرفت. دانشمندان می‌دانستند که او از این سفر جان سالم به در نخواهد برد. لایکا هرگز دفن نشد، اما بنای یادبودی در مسکو برای او بنا نهاده شده است. در مورد او بسیاری از آوازه‌ها و کتاب‌ها وجود دارد. به نظر می‌رسد لایکا برای بسیاری از مردم تبدیل به یک قهرمان شده است.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Scientists did a variety of tests for research before the Sputnik 2 was due to leave.

2. ___ Wires were applied to Laika's leash so that scientists could find the ship.

3. ___ Although Laika could not be buried, a spaceship was established in her honor.

4. ___ In the midst of the scientists' excitement, Laika's ship became too hot.

5. ___ In a prior launch, scientists sent two other dogs into space.

6. ___ Many people complained that Laika should not have gone to space.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did scientists choose Laika for the mission?
 - a. She was tough.
 - b. She was a beloved space traveler.
 - c. The trip to space confused her.
 - d. She needed to wear a special leash.
2. Why did Laika die during the trip?
 - a. The ship became as hot as a furnace.
 - b. The scientists were under a lot of stress.
 - c. Living things cannot survive in space.
 - d. The scientists didn't get information from her.
3. Scientists made Laika wear a special leash because they _____.
 - a. were awaiting information from the ship
 - b. were not able to bury her
 - c. didn't want her to float around the ship
 - d. needed to adjust the climate
4. Why did scientists apply wires to Laika's skin?
 - a. To measure her body's reactions
 - b. To allow her to mature
 - c. To take her for the entire trip
 - d. To return her to Earth

adv.

altogether

[ˌɔːltəˈgeðə]

تماماً، به طور کامل، کاملاً



- ❖ If something happens altogether, it happens completely.
- The company stopped using sugar altogether in its food.
- شرکت استفاده از شکر در محصولات را کاملاً متوقف کرد.

v.

bind

[baɪnd]

پیوند دادن، متصل کردن



- ❖ To bind is to bring people together.
- The victims of the flood were bound by their need to help each other.
- قربانیان سیل به دلیل نیازشان، برای کمک به یکدیگر متحد شدند.

n.

bruise

[bruːz]

کبودی، کبود شدگی



- ❖ A bruise is a dark mark caused by being hit by something.
- She got a bruise on her knee from falling down.
- او یک کبودی به دلیل زمین خوردن روی زانویش ایجاد شد.

n.

custom

['kʌstəm]

سنت، رسم و رسوم



- ❖ A custom is a way of doing things that has been the same for a long time.
- It is a custom that the bride and groom have the first dance.
- رسم است که عروس و داماد اولین رقص را انجام می دهند.

adj.

disobedient [ˌdɪsə'bi:diənt]

نافرمان، سرکش



- ❖ When someone is disobedient, they do not follow the rules or instructions.
- The disobedient children didn't listen to their mother and had an accident.
- بچه های سرکش به حرف های مادر خود گوش ندادند و تصادف کردند.

v.

foresee [fɔ:'si:]

پیش بینی کردن



- ❖ To foresee something is to know about it before it happens.
- The teacher didn't foresee any problems with her large class.
- معلم هیچ مشکلی را در مورد کلاس بزرگ خود پیش بینی نکرد.

v.

glimpse [glɪmps]

نگاه اجمالی کردن، نگاه سریع کردن



- ❖ To glimpse something is to see it for a short time.
- She glimpsed outside the window as the plane was about to land.
- او هنگام بلند شدن هواپیما نگاه کوتاهی از پنجره به بیرون کرد.

n.

hoop [hu:p]

حلقه



- ❖ A hoop is a ring that is made of plastic, metal, or wood.
- The boys tried to toss the ball through the basketball hoop.
- پسرها تلاش کردند که توپ را به حلقه ی بسکتبال پرتاب کنند.

n.

misfortune

[mis'fɔ:tʃu:n]

بدشانسی، بدبختی



- ❖ misfortune is bad luck or an unlucky event.
- His family helped him when he encountered misfortune.
- زمانی که او با بدشانسی روبرو شد، خانواده اش به او کمک کردند.

adj.

negative

['negətɪv]

منفی



- ❖ When something is negative, it is unpleasant or sad.
- She doesn't like to say negative things about her friends.
- او دوست نداشت چیزهای منفی در مورد دوستانش بگوید.

prep.

per

[pɜ:]

هر



- ❖ per is used to mean "each" when giving a price, size, or amount.
- It costs \$8 per person to watch the baseball game.
- برای تماشای بازی بیسبال نفری 8 دلار هزینه کردم.

v.

plead

[pli:d]

التماس کردن



- ❖ To plead is to ask for something you want very badly.
- He pleaded for his parents to let him go to the soccer game.
- او برای رفتن به بازی فوتبال به پدر و مادرش التماس کرد.

v.

rip

[rɪp]

پاره کردن



- ❖ To rip something means to pull it apart.
- She ripped the paper in half by accident.

➤ او تصادفی کاغذ را به دو نیم پاره کرد.

n.

sake

[seɪk]

به دلیل، به خاطر، برای



- ❖ The sake of something is the reason for doing it.
- The parents worked hard for their children's sake.

➤ پدر و مادرها برای فرزندانشان به سختی کار کردند.

v.

scrape

[skreɪp]

خراشیدن، خط انداختن



- ❖ To scrape something is to rub it very hard with something sharp.
- I accidentally scraped the paint off the side of the car.

➤ تصادفا رنگ کنار ماشینم را خراش دادم.

n.

source

[sɔ:s]

منشأ، سرچشمه، منبع



- ❖ A source of something is the place that it comes from.
- The river was the source of drinking water for the village.

➤ رودخانه منبع آب آشامیدنی روستا بود.



adj.

stern

[stɜ:n]

سختگیر، عبوس



- ❖ When somebody is stern, they are very serious.
- The stern teacher didn't allow the students to speak during class.
- معلم اخمو به دانش آموزان اجازه ی حرف زدن در کلاس را نمی داد.

v.

stitch

[stɪtʃ]

دوختن، کوک زدن



- ❖ To stitch is to use a needle and thread to join pieces of cloth together.
- My grandmother stitched the pieces together to make a big blanket.
- مادربزرگم تکه هایی را به هم دوخت تا یک پتوی بزرگ درست کند.

n.

thump

[θʌmp]

تالاپ (صدای افتادن)



- ❖ A thump is the sound of a heavy object falling.
- They heard the thump when the bowling ball hit the floor.
- زمانی که توپ بولینگ به زمین افتاد، صدای تالاپ شنیدند.

adj.

vehement

['vi:əmənt]

پرشور، پراحساسات



- ❖ When somebody is vehement, they are angry and emotional.
- Gina was vehement when she found out that Liz was bad in school.
- زمانی که جینا فهمید که لیز در مدرسه بد بوده است ، شور و شوق زیادی داشت.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. negative / misfortune

Greg had the _____ of falling in a pool, though he didn't know how to swim. The experience left him with _____ feelings about swimming pools.

2. bruise / altogether

After one day, the _____ on her lip began to go away. In a week, it had disappeared _____.

3. per / sake

For the _____ of fairness, we tried to divide the pizza equally. One pizza was enough to give three slices _____ person.

4. disobedient / pleaded

A woman _____ with the child to behave in the store. The child, however, continued to be _____.

5. source / glimpsed

They walked past a large river, which the guide said was the _____ of a waterfall. They finally _____ the waterfall when they reached the bottom of the hill.

6. stitched / hoop

The girl wanted to make her plastic _____ look pretty, so she _____ cloth around it.

7. custom / bind

The family was _____ tightly. For example, on Saturdays, it was their _____ to go to the park together.

8. stern / ripped

The _____ teacher was angry to see the students passing notes. She took the note from the students and _____ it into pieces.

9. thump / scraped

The boy lost his balance and fell with a _____. When he got up, he noticed that he'd _____ his elbow.

10. vehement / foresee

The coach didn't _____ the loss for his team. So, after the game, he was _____.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. Kelly had the **misfortune** of breaking _____.
2. The **disobedient** dog ran away _____.
3. She felt **bound** to her friends because she had _____.
4. The weatherman didn't **foresee** any _____.
5. The family had a **custom** of _____.
6. She **glimpsed** at his painting _____.
7. Charlie **ripped** the paper in half and _____.
8. Jasmine **pleaded** with her teacher _____.
9. Leslie **scraped** the ice _____.
10. George was **vehement** about being allowed _____.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a. gave one piece to his friend | b. bad weather this weekend |
| c. from its owner at the park | d. off the window |
| e. to give her a better grade | f. known them for a long time |
| g. to use the computer | h. eating dinner early on Sundays |
| i. her arm before the competition | j. before it was completed |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. There was a tear in my shirt, _____.
2. She dropped the scissors on the carpet, _____.
3. His parents were strict, _____.
4. The website was good, _____.
5. The fight was horrifying, _____.
6. I enjoy soda, _____.
7. He went to school despite being sick _____.
8. They used a different system _____.
9. He liked showing off, _____.
10. He fell down the stairs, _____.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a. so he tried jumping through the hoop | d. so my mom stitched it back together |
| b. because the sake of his grade depended on it | f. that was altogether different from mine |
| c. but only 2 cans per week | h. because stern rules built character |
| e. so he had bruises on his arm | j. but the sources were unreliable |
| g. it filled him with negative dreams | |
| i. so there was a slight thump | |

Gwen's New Friends

Gwen walked into the gym for her next class. Coach Peeves said, "Today, we're playing basketball. The **custom** is to let you choose your own teams. However, we're going to do things differently."

The coach assigned each girl to a team. There were six girls **per** team. Gwen **glimpsed** at her teammates. She didn't know any of them. All of her friends were on the other teams. She couldn't believe her **misfortune**.

"I feel sick. May I go to the nurse?" asked Gwen.

The coach could **foresee** Gwen's excuses. It wasn't the first time Gwen tried to leave class. With a **stern** voice, the coach said, "No."

Gwen was **vehement**. "I don't know any of these girls! Let me play on another team. Please!" she **pleaded**.

"Gwen, don't be **disobedient**. I don't want to hear any more **negative** comments from you."

Gwen had no choice. Then a girl smiled at her. "Hi, I'm Stephanie. I was in your English class last year," she said. Gwen remembered her. "For the **sake** of the team, please try your best. I know you're a good player," said Stephanie.

When the game started, Gwen played as best as she could. She took a long shot. The ball sailed through the air and went right through the **hoop**!

"That was awesome!" said one of her teammates. Later, Gwen fell with a loud **thump**.

"Are you OK?" asked her teammates. They were worried. She had **ripped** her jeans. She had **scraped** her knee and had a small **bruise**.

Gwen told her teammates, "My knee is fine, and I can **stitch** my pants later. Let's keep playing!"

By the end of the game, Gwen forgot **altogether** that she hadn't wanted to play, and her team won! The victory **bound** Gwen's team together. She had made a lot of new friends, and they were a **source** of happiness for her for many years.



دوستان جدید گوئن

گوئن برای کلاس بعدی‌اش به سالن ورزش رفت. مربی پیوز گفت: " امروز، ما بسکتبال بازی می‌کنیم. رسم این است که اجازه بدهیم تیم‌های خودتان را انتخاب کنید. با این حال، ما می‌خواهیم کار دیگری انجام دهیم." مربی هر دختر را در یک تیم قرار داد. شش دختر در هر تیم بودند. گوئن یک نگاهی به هم‌تیمی‌هایش انداخت. او هیچ کدام از آن‌ها را نمی‌شناخت. همه دوستانش در تیم‌های دیگر بودند.

او نمی‌توانست این بدبختی را باور کند. گوئن پرسید " من احساس مریضی می‌کنم. می‌توانم بروم پیش پرستار؟ مربی می‌توانست بهانه‌های گوئن را پیش‌بینی کند. این اولین باری نبود که گوئن سعی میکرد کلاس را ترک کند.

مربی با صدای خشنی گفت: " نه " گوئن غضبناک بود و گفت: " من هیچ کدام از این دخترها را نمی‌شناسم! بگذارید در یک تیم دیگر بازی کنم. خواهش می‌کنم! " او التماس کرد: " گوئن، نافرمانی نکن.

من نمی‌خواهم نظرات منفی تری از تو بشنوم، کافی است." گوئن هیچ انتخابی نداشت. سپس دختری به او لبخند زد و گفت: " سلام، من استفانی هستم. او گفت: " من سال گذشته در کلاس انگلیسی بودم. " گوئن او را به خاطر داشت. استفانی گفت: " به خاطر این تیم، لطفاً بهترین تلاش خودت را امتحان کن.

من می‌دانم که تو بازیکن خوبی هستی." وقتی بازی شروع شد، گوئن تا آنجا که می‌توانست بهترین بازی را انجام داد. او یک پرتاب بلند انداخت. توپ از میان هوا رد شد و درست میان حلقه فرود آمد. یکی از هم‌تیمی‌هایش گفت: " این پرتاب عالی بود!" بعداً گوئن با صدای بلندی به زمین افتاد و هم‌تیمی‌هایش پرسیدند: " حالت خوب است؟ " آن‌ها نگران بودند. شلوار جینش پاره شده بود. زانویش خراش برداشته بود و کبود شده بود.

گوئن به هم‌تیمی‌هایش گفت: " زانوی من خوب است، و بعداً می‌توانم شلوارم را بدوزم. بیا بید بازی کنیم! " در پایان بازی، گوئن کلاً فراموش کرد که نمی‌خواست از اول بازی کند و تیم او برنده شد! این پیروزی، اعضای تیم گوئن را به هم متصل کرد. او دوستان جدیدی پیدا کرده بود که سال‌ها منبع شادی و خوشحالی او بودند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The custom was to allow the girls to choose their own teams.

2. ___ Gwen told her teammates that she could stitch her pants later.

3. ___ There were eight girls per team.

4. ___ Gwen pleaded to be on another team that had some of her friends.

5. ___ Stephanie asked Gwen to lose on purpose for the sake of the team.

6. ___ Gwen ripped her jeans, scraped her knee, and got a bruise when she fell.

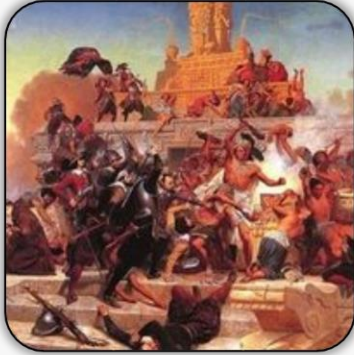
PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did Coach Peeves speak to Gwen in a stern voice?
 - a. For falling with a thump
 - b. For making negative comments
 - c. For choosing her own team
 - d. For having misfortune
2. How did Gwen know Stephanie?
 - a. They were old friends.
 - b. They were vehement.
 - c. They could foresee the team.
 - d. They had an English class together.
3. What happened after Gwen's shot went through the hoop?
 - a. She faced the stern coach.
 - b. Her teammate said it was awesome.
 - c. She changed teams.
 - d. She forgot about the rules altogether.
4. How were the girls on Gwen's team bound together?
 - a. They were all disobedient.
 - b. They won the game.
 - c. They chose a new team.
 - d. They all had bruises.

n.

civilization [ˌsɪv(ə)laɪˈzeɪʃ(ə)n]

تمدن



- ❖ A civilization is an organized group of humans that have culture and government.
- Most early civilizations in Central America didn't use metal weapons.
- اغلب تمدن های اولیه در آمریکای مرکزی از اسلحه های فلزی استفاده نمی کردند.

adj.

convenient [kən'vi:niənt]

آسان، راحت



- ❖ When something is convenient, it is easy to do and does not take a lot of work.
- The bus is a convenient way to get to school.
- اتوبوس یک روش آسان برای رفتن به مدرسه است.

n.

den [den]

لانه



- ❖ A den is a living space for some types of animals, such as lions.
- The mother lion left her babies in the den.
- شیر مادر فرزندانش را در لانه جا گذاشت.

n.

dew [dju:]

شبنم



- ❖ dew is the drops of water that form on the ground outside during the night.
- When we woke up, we saw that the grass was covered in dew.
- زمانی که از خواب بیدار شدیم، علف ها با شبنم پوشیده شده بودند.

adj.

drastic

['dræstɪk]

جدی، شدید



- ❖ When something is drastic, it is extreme or major.
- She made a drastic decision to get her long hair cut short.
- او یک تصمیم جدی گرفت تا موهای بلندش را کوتاه کند.

v.

exit

['eksɪt]

خارج شدن



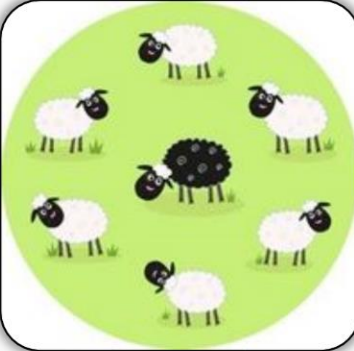
- ❖ To exit means to leave.
- The students exited through the front door.
- دانش آموزان از در جلویی خارج شدند.

n.

flock

[flɒk]

گله، دسته



- ❖ A flock is a group of animals, such as birds, sheep or goats.
- There was one black sheep in the entire flock.
- یک گوسفند سیاه در کل گله بود.

v.

fold

[fəʊld]

تا کردن



- ❖ To fold is to bend something like paper or cloth so that it takes up less space.
- I folded the paper and put it in my pocket.
- من کاغذ را تا کردم و آن را در جیبم گذاشتم.

n.

lid

[lɪd]

در، سرپوش، درب



- ❖ A lid is a top for a box or container that can be removed.
- He lifted the lid of the box and revealed her present.

➤ او درپوش جعبه را برداشت و جایزه اش را دید.

v.

loom

[lu:m]

پدیدار شدن، نمایان شدن



- ❖ To loom is to seem very large and often scary.
- The ominous clouds loomed over the school.

➤ ابر شوم از بالای مدرسه پدیدار شد.

adj.

mighty

['maɪti]

نیرومند، محکم



- ❖ When something is mighty, it is strong and large.
- The mighty wrestler scared all who faced him.

➤ کشتی گیر نیرومند هرکسی که با او روبرو می شد را می ترساند.

n.

mushroom

['mʌʃrʊm]

قارچ



- ❖ A mushroom is a fungus with a round top. Some are used as food.
- The soup had fresh mushrooms in it.

➤ در سوپ قارچ تازه بود.

adj.

native

['neɪtɪv]

اهلی، بومی، محلی



- ❖ When something is native, it is originating in a certain place or area.
- Avocados are native fruits of Mexico.

➤ آوکادو میوه ی بومی مکزیک می باشد.

n.

poison

['pɔɪz(ə)n]

سم



- ❖ poison is a dangerous substance that causes illness or death.
- They used poison to get rid of the rats in their home.

➤ آن ها برای خلاصی از موش ها از سم استفاده کردند.

n.

reed

[ri:d]

نی



- ❖ reeds are tall and skinny plants that grow in groups near water.
- The sun set behind the reeds of the lake's shore.

➤ خورشید پشت نی های ساحل دریاچه غروب کرد.

v.

shield

[ʃi:ld]

محافظت کردن



- ❖ To shield something is to protect it.

- She shielded her eyes from the sun with sunglasses.

➤ او با عینک آفتابی چشمانش را پوشاند.

adj.

stormy

['sto:mi]

توفانی



- ❖ stormy describes something affected or characterized by storms.
- The golfers decided to go home because of the stormy weather.
- به دلیل هوای توفانی، گلف بازها تصمیم گرفتند که به خانه بروند.

v.

sway

[swei]

تاب خوردن، تکان خوردن



- ❖ To sway is to move slowly from side to side.
- She swayed while she listened to the music.
- در حالی که به آهنگ گوش می داد، به این سو و آن سو حرکت می کرد.

adj.

urban

['ɜ:b(ə)n]

شهری



- ❖ When something is urban, it is related to the city.
- Subways are an important form of urban transportation.
- مترو یکی از مهم ترین اشکال حمل و نقل شهری می باشد.

v.

wade

[weɪd]

در آب راه رفتن، به آب زدن



- ❖ To wade is to walk in or pass through water.
- The child waded in the water at the beach.

➤ بچه از آب ساحل رد شد.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. convenient / lid

The box had a _____ that was very easy to open. It was a _____ place to store the young girl's toys.

2. shield / folded

When it started raining, I _____ my newspaper in half. Then I carried it over my head to _____ myself from the rain.

3. exit / urban

She wasn't used to spending time in an _____ setting. After only a few days, she was glad to _____ the city.

4. mighty / civilization

The _____ soldier spent three weeks alone in the forest. When he returned to _____, he was stronger than ever.

5. stormy / swayed

The branches of the trees _____ as the wind blew. The wind was stronger than usual because of the _____ weather.

6. reeds / waded

The boys _____ to the middle of the lake. At that point, they couldn't go any further because the _____ grew too thickly.

7. dew / flock

The _____ of geese chose not to land in the field because it was still wet with _____.

8. poison / drastic

Some plants contain _____ that can be eliminated by cooking. The cooking process results in a _____ change to the plant's chemical makeup.

9. den / mushrooms

There was little light inside the _____ where the bears lived. Outside, there was little plant life, just a few _____ and some small weeds.

10. native / loomed

The _____ animals of the island knew how to protect themselves from bad weather. When a storm _____, they immediately ran for cover.

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The plant is filled with a dangerous substance.

2. The man asked for extra fungus with a round top for his sauce.

3. My socks got wet when I walked in the drops of water that formed outside.

4. Madagascar has an interesting group of original animals and plants.

5. The boy put on a scarf to protect his neck from the cold wind.

6. Alyssa found a small living place where she thought a rabbit lived.

7. The man bent the letter and put it into an envelope.

8. The farmer traded his group of animals of goats for a new horse.

9. I was not strong enough to lift the top part of the container.

10. After the movie was over, the audience left through the back door.

Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. What word below best describes a superhero?

a. Mushrooms	b. Dew	c. Mighty	d. Reeds
--------------	--------	-----------	----------
2. Something that is easy to do is described as what?

a. Drastic	b. Convenient	c. Poison	d. Urban
------------	---------------	-----------	----------
3. What is an activity done in the water?

a. Sway	b. Fold	c. Exit	d. Wade
---------	---------	---------	---------
4. Which covers a box?

a. A den	b. A lid	c. A civilization	d. A flock
----------	----------	-------------------	------------
5. Which word fits best? Koalas are _____ to Australia.

a. loom	b. shield	c. stormy	d. native
---------	-----------	-----------	-----------

Kara Goes Camping

“Kara, would you like to go camping with my family?” asked Tracy. Kara had never been camping before, but she decided to go anyway. That weekend, they drove to Estes Park. When they arrived, Kara looked around. She felt so far from **civilization**.

After they set up the camp, they went for a walk. Tracy’s father, Mr. Grieves, showed them the **native** plants and animals. “Look,” he said, “that’s a fox’s **den**. Do you see that bunch of **mushrooms** next to it. Don’t touch them. They contain **poison**.” Kara was bored. She didn’t care about nature.

As the day went on, **mighty** clouds soon **loomed** in the distance. “It looks like **stormy** weather,” said Tracy. “We should go back.” It suddenly began to rain. They used an umbrella to **shield** them from the rain. Back at the camp, they ate cold sandwiches for dinner and went to sleep.

By morning, the rain had stopped. It was a **drastic** change from the previous day’s weather. They **folded** their sleeping bags and put them in a box. Tracy closed the **lid** and told Kara, “Today will be fun, I promise!” Kara didn’t believe her. She missed her **convenient** life in the city. She was used to an **urban** lifestyle.

After breakfast, they went for a walk. The grass was covered with **dew**, and it gleamed in the sunlight. Finally, they reached a lake. Kara and Tracy **waded** into the water. The **reeds swayed** in the wind, and a **flock** of birds flew above. Kara felt very peaceful.

That night, they made a fire. They sat around it while Mr. Grieves told scary stories. Kara had a lot of fun. Camping was a good way for friends to spend time together, she realized.

The next day, it was time for them to leave. She felt sad while they **exited** the park. She didn’t like camping at first, but she learned how fun it could be over the weekend.

کارا به تفریح می رود!

تریسی پرسید: " کارا، آیا دوست داری با خانواده من اردو بزنی؟" کارا هرگز قبل از این به پیک نیک نرفته بود، اما تصمیم گرفت که به هر حال برود. آخر هفته، آن‌ها به پارک استس رفتند. وقتی رسیدند، کارا به اطراف نگاه کرد. او خیلی از تمدن فاصله داشت.

بعد از این که به اردوگاه رسیدند، برای پیاده‌روی راه افتادند. پدرش، آقای گریوز، گیاهان و حیوانات بومی را به آن‌ها نشان داد و گفت: " نگاه کنید، لانه روباه است. آن خوشه قارچ را کنار آن می‌بینید. به آن‌ها دست نزنید. آن‌ها حاوی سم هستند. " کارا خسته شده بود. به طبیعت اهمیتی نمی‌داد.

همان طور که روز ادامه داشت، ابر عظیمی به زودی در دوردست پدیدار شد و تریسی گفت: " به نظر می‌رسد که هوا طوفانی است. ما باید برگردیم. " آن‌ها از یک چتر برای محافظت از خودشان در برابر باران استفاده کردند. به اردوگاه بازگشتند، ساندویچ سرد خوردند و به خواب رفتند.

تا صبح باران بند آمده بود. این تغییر شدیدی نسبت به آب و هوای روز گذشته بود. آن‌ها کیسه‌های خواب خود را تا کردند و آن‌ها را در یک جعبه قرار دادند. تریسی در را بست و به کارا گفت: " امروز سرگرم‌کننده است، قول می‌دهم! " کارا حرفش را باور نکرد. او دلش برای زندگی راحت خود در شهر تنگ شده بود. او به سبک زندگی شهری عادت داشت.

بعد از صبحانه، برای پیاده‌روی رفتند. علف‌ها از شب‌نم پوشیده شده بود و در نور خورشید می‌درخشید. سرانجام به یک دریاچه رسیدند. کارا و تریسی به درون آب رفتند. نی‌ها در باد تاب می‌خوردند و یک دسته پرنده بر فراز آن‌ها پرواز می‌کردند. کارا احساس آرامش کرد.

آن شب آتشی افروختند. آن‌ها دور آن نشستند و آقای گریوز برایشان داستان‌های ترسناک گفت. کارا شوخی می‌کرد. او متوجه شد که اردو زدن راهی خوب برای دوستان است تا زمانی را با هم بگذرانند.

روز بعد، وقت رفتن بود. وقتی از پارک خارج شدند احساس ناراحتی می‌کرد. در ابتدا دوست نداشت چادر بزند، اما یاد گرفت که آخر هفته چقدر میتواند جالب باشد.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ Tracy invites Kara to visit a new civilization with her family.

2. ____ Tracy's father shows them native plants and animals.

3. ____ The group returns to camp because mighty clouds were looming.

4. ____ They used an umbrella to shield themselves from the rain.

5. ____ The weather was stormy on the second day of camping.

6. ____ Kara has a drastic change in opinion about camping at the end of the story.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which of the following does Kara NOT see during the trip?
 - a. A fox's den
 - b. A flock of birds
 - c. A bunch of mushrooms
 - d. An animal with poison
2. What does Kara miss about her urban lifestyle?
 - a. It is convenient.
 - b. It is easier to sleep.
 - c. It is far from civilization.
 - d. It isn't covered in dew.
3. What does Kara see swaying in the water?
 - a. Birds
 - b. Fish
 - c. Reeds
 - d. Lids
4. How does Kara feel as she exits the park?
 - a. Relieved
 - b. Angry
 - c. Tired
 - d. Sad

n.

accent

['æks(ə)nt]

لهجه



- ❖ An accent is a certain way of speaking that shows where a person is from.
- The new teacher's accent was clearly a German one.

➤ لهجه ی معلم جدید به طور واضح آلمانی بود.

n.

barber

['bɑ:bə]

آرایشگر



- ❖ A barber is a person whose job is to cut hair.
- My hair is getting much too long. I'd better go to the barber's shop.
- موهایم خیلی بلند شده است، بهتر است که به آرایشگاه بروم.

n.

basement

['beismənt]

زیرزمین



- ❖ A basement of a house or building is a room that is built underground.
- They turned their basement into a game room.

➤ آن ها زیرزمین را به اتاق بازی تبدیل کردند.

n.

blank

[blæŋk]

سفید، نانوخته



- ❖ When something is blank, it does not have anything on it.
- She got a blank paper to draw on.

➤ او برای نقاشی یک کاغذ سفید برداشت.

v.

blink

[blɪŋk]

چشمک زدن، پلک زدن



- ❖ To blink means to shut the eyes and quickly open them again.
- I blinked many times so that my eyes could adjust to the bright light.
- برای اینکه چشمانم به نور زیاد عادت کنند، زیاد پلک زدم.

n.

choir

['kwaɪə]

گروه کُر، گروه سرود



- ❖ A choir is a group of people who sing together.
- He had choir practice every day after school.
- او هر روز بعد از مدرسه تمرین گروه کر داشت.

n.

comic

['kɒmɪk]

خنده دار، بامزه، کمدی



- ❖ When something is comic, it is funny.
- The comic actor was famous for his jokes.
- بازیگر فیلم های طنز به خاطر جوک هایش معروف بود.

v.

complicate

['kɒmplɪkeɪt]

دشوار کردن، پیچیده کردن



- ❖ To complicate something means to make it harder than necessary.
- The bad weather complicated finishing the job quickly.
- هوای بد، تمام کردن سریع کار را پیچیده کرد.

v.

decline

[di'klaɪn]

رد کردن، نپذیرفتن



- ❖ To decline an offer or invitation means to say no to it.
- She declined his offer to pay for her dinner.

➤ او پیشنهاد او را برای پرداخت پول شام رد کرد.

n.

errand

['erənd]

ماموریت، کار



- ❖ An errand is a trip taken to do a specific activity.
- He couldn't go to practice because he had several errands to do.
- او نمی توانست برای تمرین برود، چرا که کارهای زیادی برای انجام داشت.

n.

glove

[glʌv]

دستکش



- ❖ A glove is a piece of clothing that covers your fingers and hand.
- When it gets cold, I always put on a pair of gloves.

➤ وقتی که هوا سرد می شود، همیشه یک جفت دستکش می کشم.

n.

hermit

['hɜ:mɪt]

زاهد، گوشه نشین



- ❖ A hermit is one who lives alone and does not spend time with others.
- The hermit lived a simple life in a small cave in the forest.

➤ فرد زاهد یک زندگی ساده در غاری در جنگل داشت.

adv.

justly

['dʒʌstli]

منصفانه، عادلانه



❖ If something is done justly, then it is fair.

➤ We justly decided to give the prize to him.

➤ ما به صورت عادلانه تصمیم گرفتیم که جایزه را به او بدهیم.

n.

leather

['leðə]

چرم



❖ Leather is a material made from animal skin that is used to make clothing.

➤ He got a new leather jacket for his birthday.

➤ او برای تولدش یک ژاکت چرمی جدید گرفت.

v.

ponder

['pɒndə]

اندیشیدن، فکر کردن



❖ To ponder something is to think about it carefully.

➤ She sat in the park and pondered her problem.

➤ او در پارک نشست و به مشکلاتش فکر کرد.

n.

reserve

[rɪ'zɜ:v]

رزرو کردن



❖ To reserve something means to keep it for a certain person or time.

➤ He reserved a table at the busy restaurant.

➤ او در یک رستوران شلوغ میز رزرو کرد.

n.

script

[skript]

سناریو، فیلمنامه



- ❖ A script is the words of a film or play.
- He read the script of the play three times.

➤ او نمایش نامه را سه بار خواند.

v.

search

[sɜ:tʃ]

جستجو کردن



- ❖ To search for something or someone means to look for them carefully.
- I searched the newspaper for a new job.

➤ من برای یافتن شغل، کل روزنامه را جستجو کردم.

v.

slam

[slæm]

کوبیدن، محکم بستن



- ❖ To slam is to close something hard.
- She slammed the book shut after she finished reading it.
- پس از اینکه خواندن کتاب را تمام کرد، آن را بست.

n.

staircase

['steəkeɪs]

راه پله



- ❖ A staircase is a set of stairs found inside a building.
- The staircase leads directly into the kitchen.

➤ راه پله مستیما به آشپزخانه راه دارد.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- an underground room
 - accent
 - basement
 - a technique
 - errand
- to think about something
 - complicate
 - reserve
 - ponder
 - slam
- the written words of a play or film
 - script
 - blank
 - barber
 - gloves
- a group that sings
 - hermits
 - leather
 - choir
 - staircases
- in a fair way
 - comic
 - decline
 - searching
 - justly

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- slam
 - to close loudly
 - to be careful
 - to close the eyes
 - to save
- decline
 - to look for
 - to say no
 - to be right
 - fair
- hermit
 - clothing for your hands
 - something that is funny
 - a trip to do something
 - a person who is alone
- leather
 - a distinct way of speaking
 - material used to make clothing
 - an underground room
 - a piece of clothing for the hands
- barber
 - a singing group
 - a person who cuts hair
 - a set of stairs
 - phrases that form a play

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. The writer's comic stories _____.
2. Donna usually ran errands _____.
3. I tried to reserve _____.
4. She wanted to join the choir _____.
5. A beautiful staircase _____.
6. The speaker's strong accent _____.
7. Roger pondered a long time _____.
8. The hermit _____.
9. I remembered to make sure I had my gloves _____.
10. The large basement _____.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a. after hearing them sing in church | b. made him hard to understand |
| c. before buying a new car | d. some seats for this week's show |
| e. always make me laugh | f. makes a great playroom |
| g. led up to the second floor | h. slept in small cave |
| i. just before I left the house | j. right before coming home from work |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. I put some medicine in my eyes, _____.
2. The boy's mom yelled at him for getting mud on the couch, _____.
3. He asked Sara to see the scary movie, _____.
4. He spent the period daydreaming. So when he turned in his test, _____.
5. The new play was great _____.
6. I didn't pay attention in class, _____.
7. My hair was a mess, _____.
8. He couldn't stand the sound of the music, _____.
9. Dean and Anne finished the race at the same time, _____.
10. He lost his glasses, _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. because Tony spent a lot of time on the script | d. so both were justly given medals |
| b. so he cleaned the leather couch | f. so the homework was very complicated |
| c. so I went to see the barber | h. so he had to search for them for an hour |
| e. but she declined | j. so he left the room and slammed the door |
| g. it was completely blank | |
| i. so I had to keep blinking them | |

The School Play

Peter was excited. Next week he was going to audition for the school play. Everybody knew he was a great actor. He was sure he would get the lead role.

Later, his friend Robby asked him, "Have you seen the **script** for the play?"

"Yes. The title is *The Lost **Glove***—it's a **comic** play," replied Peter.

Robby said, "I want to play the part of the **hermit** because the hermit gets to talk with an **accent!**"

"I want the lead role of the **barber**. I didn't know you liked acting. I thought you liked **choir** better," said Peter.

"Acting is also a hobby of mine. Do you want to practice with me? The **basement** at my house is quiet. It's perfect!" Robby replied.

"I don't like practicing with others. It **complicates** the process for me," said Peter.

Actually, Peter didn't want to practice at all. The teacher would surely **reserve** the lead part for him. A few days later, Robby came to his house.

Robby said, "Do you want to practice the scene on the **staircase**? It's the part where the migrant **searches** for a new job."

Peter **declined** the invitation. "I can't today. I need to do some **errands**." Then he **slammed** the door. It was just an excuse. Peter didn't want to help Robby.

On the day of auditions, Peter wore his lucky **leather** jacket. He always got the best part when he wore it. The teacher told him to begin, but his mind was **blank**. He couldn't remember the lines!

A week later, the teacher put a list of the parts on the wall. Peter read the list, looking for his name. He was shocked by what he saw. He **blinked** his eyes and looked again. He didn't get the lead part—Robby did! Peter **pondered** the situation and came to the idea that Robby **justly** received the part. He earned it by practicing. Next time, Peter would practice, too.



نمایشنامه مدرسه

پیتر هیجان زده بود. هفته بعد برای شرکت در مسابقه نمایشنامه خوانی مدرسه آزمون بازیگری داشت. همه می‌دانستند که او هنرپیشه بزرگی است. او مطمئن بود که نقش اول را به عهده خواهد گرفت. بعداً، دوستش رابی از او پرسید: "تو فیلمنامه را دیده‌ای؟" پیتر در جواب گفت: "بله! عنوان نمایشنامه، دستکش‌های گم‌شده ست - این یک نمایشنامه کمیک است."

رابی گفت: "من می‌خواهم نقش راهب را بازی کنم چراکه راهب باید با لهجه‌ای خاص صحبت کند!"

پیتر پاسخ داد: "من می‌خواهم نقش دلاک را ایفا کنم. نمی‌دانستم که تو از هنرپیشگی خوست آمده. من فکر می‌کردم که تو گروه کر را بهتر دوست داری."

رابی پاسخ داد: "هنرپیشگی فعالیت مورد علاقه من هم هست. می‌خواهی با من تمرین کنی؟ زیرزمین خانه من ساکت و برای تمرین عالی است!"

پیتر گفت: "من دوست ندارم با دیگران تمرین کنم. این فرآیند را برای من پیچیده می‌کند."

در واقع، پیتر اصلاً نمی‌خواست تمرین کند. معلم حتماً نقش اصلی را برای او رزرو میکرد. چند روز بعد، رابی به خانه پیتر آمد. او گفت: "می‌خواهی صحنه را در پلکان تمرین کنیم؟" پیتر این دعوت را نپذیرفت و گفت: "من امروز نمی‌توانم." سپس در را به شدت به هم کوبید. این فقط یک بهانه بود. پیتر نمی‌خواست به او کمک کند. در روز تست هنرپیشگی، پیتر کت چرمی‌اش را پوشید. همیشه وقتی آن را می‌پوشید بهترین نقش را به دست می‌آورد. معلم به او گفت که شروع کند، اما ذهنش خالی بود. او نمی‌توانست دیالوگ‌ها را به خاطر بیاورد! یک هفته بعد معلم فهرستی از نقش‌ها را روی دیوار گذاشت. پیتر لیست را خواند و به دنبال نام خودش گشت. از آنچه می‌دید یکه خورد. او پلک زد و دوباره نگاه کرد. او نقش اول را به دست نیاورده بود- بلکه رابی آن را تصاحب کرد! پیتر درباره این وضعیت فکر کرد و به این نتیجه رسید که رابی عادلانه نقش را دریافت کرده‌است. او آن را با تمرین به دست آورد. دفعه بعد، پیتر هم تمرین می‌کند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ The title of the script was *The Big Barber*.

2. ___ Robby wanted the part of the hermit because he would get to talk with an accent.

3. ___ Robby declined Peter's offer to practice together.

4. ___ The scene on the staircase was about the migrant searching for a new job.

5. ___ Peter's mind was blank during the audition.

6. ___ Peter felt that Robby justly received the lead role.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did Peter decide not to practice?
 - a. He didn't want the part.
 - b. He thought the teacher would give him the role.
 - c. He disliked Robby.
 - d. He wanted to be in the choir instead.
2. Where did Robby suggest they practice together?
 - a. At the school
 - b. In his basement
 - c. At the theater
 - d. In the park
3. What was Peter's first excuse for not practicing with Robby?
 - a. He had to run errands.
 - b. He had to study for a test.
 - c. He said it complicated the process.
 - d. Robby lived too far away.
4. What kind of play were the boys auditioning for?
 - a. Romance
 - b. Comic
 - c. Drama
 - d. Action

adj.

afflicted

[ə'flɪktəd]

مبتلا، دچار



- ❖ afflicted means to suffer physically or mentally.
- He was afflicted by pain in his right arm.

➤ او دچار درد در بازوی راستش بود.

n.

aisle

[aɪl]

راهرو



- ❖ An aisle is a space between two things that people use to walk.
- They were told to clear the aisle because the plane was about to land.

➤ به آن ها گفته شد که راهرو را خالی کنند، چرا که هواپیما در حال بلند شدن بود.

n.

atmosphere

['ætməsfɪə]

اتمسفر، جو زمین



- ❖ The atmosphere is the air around the Earth where weather conditions form.
- Scientists worry that harmful substances are hurting the atmosphere.

➤ دانشمندان نگران آسیب مواد مضر بر جو هستند.

n.

author

['ɔ:θə]

مولف، نویسنده



- ❖ An author is a person who wrote a certain piece of writing.
- The author was hard at work on his next novel.

➤ نویسنده بر روی رمان جدیدش به شدت کار کرد.



n.

breakdown

['breɪkdaʊn]

خرابی، نقص



- ❖ A breakdown is a failure to work correctly.
- Her car had a breakdown, and she wasn't sure how to fix it.
- ماشین او خراب بود و نمی دانست چگونه آن را تعمیر کند.

n.

cargo

['kɑːɡəʊ]

محموله، بار



- ❖ cargo is the items carried by a ship or airplane.
- The cargo of the ship got wet when it started raining.
- محموله ی کشتی هنگام شروع بارندگی، خیس شد.

n.

chapter

['tʃæptə]

فصل (کتاب)



- ❖ A chapter is a part of a book that usually has a number or a title.
- The first chapter of a book usually introduces the main character of a story.
- فصل اول کتاب معمولا کاراکترهای اصلی داستان را معرفی می کند.

v.

connect

[kə'nekt]

وصل کردن، متصل کردن



- ❖ To connect two things means to join them together.
- I connected the mouse to my laptop computer.
- من موس را به لپ تاپم وصل کردم.

adv.

etc.

[ɪ]

و غیره



- ❖ etc. is short for “etcetera.” It is used to refer to other unspecified objects.
- She was going to bring treats to the party: cookies, muffins, cake, etc.
- او رفت تا اسباب پذیرایی بیاورد: بیسکویت ها، مافین ها، کیک و غیره

v.

flip

[flɪp]

فشار دادن (دکمه)، زدن کلید برق



- ❖ To flip means to press a switch quickly to turn it on or off.
- To turn on the lights, just flip this switch.
- برای روشن کردن چراغ، دکمه روشن خاموش را فشار دهید.

adj.

idle

['aɪdl]

بیکار



- ❖ If you are idle, you are not doing anything.
- She read a book to keep from being idle.
- او برای رهایی از بیکاری کتابی خواند.

v.

notify

['nəʊtɪfaɪ]

اطلاع دادن، آگاه کردن



- ❖ To notify someone of something is to tell them about it.
- The teacher notified us about a change to our assignment.
- معلم در مورد تغییر تکالیف به ما اطلاع داد.



n.

pea

[pi:]

نخود فرنگی

- ❖ peas are a vegetable that is small, round and green.
- His favorite food was peas.

➤ غذای مورد علاقه ی او نخود فرنگی بود.



n.

raisin

['reiz(ə)n]

کشمش

- ❖ A raisin is a dried grape.
- raisins are one of my favorite snacks.

➤ کشمش یکی از محبوب ترین میان وعده ها برای من است.



v.

retain

[ri'tein]

نگه داشتن، حفظ کردن

- ❖ To retain something is to keep it.
- Even by the afternoon, the day had retained the morning's freshness.
- حتی تا بعد ازظهر، روز هنوز تازگی اش را حفظ کرده بود.



v.

state

[steit]

اعلام کردن، بیان نمودن

- ❖ To state something means to say it in a definite way.
- The president stated his opinion about the world's health concerns.

➤ رییس جمهور نظر خود را در مورد نگرانی های بهداشت جهانی بیان کرد.

n.

tray

[treɪ]

سینی



- ❖ A tray is a flat plate used to hold food.
- The waiter brought our food on a tray.

➤ گارسون غذای ما را در سینی آورد.

adj.

unfortunate

[ʌn'fɔ:tʃ(ə)nət]

تاسف‌آور، مایه تاسف



- ❖ If something is unfortunate, it is bad or unlucky.
- It was unfortunate that Dave's team lost, but he still had fun.
- این که تیم دیو ببازد یک بدشانسی بود، اما او هنوز شاد است.

adj.

vivid

['vɪvɪd]

واضح، روشن



- ❖ When something is vivid, it is bright and colorful.
- The figures in the painting were vivid.

➤ شخصیت های نقاشی واضح بودند.

v.

vomit

['vɒmɪt]

استفراغ کردن، بالا آوردن



- ❖ To vomit means to have food come up from one's stomach.
- It is common for women to vomit when they are pregnant.

➤ زمانی که خانم ها حامله هستند، بالا آوردن طبیعی است.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. cargo
a. space b. items c. air d. list
2. retain
a. to keep b. to join c. to do d. to press a switch
3. vivid
a. to not work b. bright c. end d. vegetable
4. raisin
a. division b. grape c. air d. writer
5. idle
a. doing nothing b. affected c. plate d. to have food come up

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Scientists do not completely understand the air that surrounds the Earth.

2. The police officer said in a definite way that he arrived at exactly 1:15 PM.

3. The teacher asked the students to read three divisions in a book.

4. Carolyn told me that she would be late to the meeting.

5. His mother brought his food to him on a flat serving plate.

6. Gina was affected with guilt because her brother got hurt while she watched him.

7. Islands like Bali, Hawaii, Brunei, and the others similar, rely on tourism.

8. The flight attendant asked me to keep my bag out of the space between the seats.

9. The computer's failure to work caused major problems at work.

10. The person who wrote the book was nice enough to sign my copy of his book.

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. Connect your seat belt _____.
2. Patty was **afflicted** by _____.
3. The **cargo** was lost when the door _____.
4. The school will **notify** your _____.
5. The **author** of the book _____.
6. **Flip** the switch _____.
7. After the **breakdown**, _____.
8. Katie said her **peas** were _____.
9. Vanessa had **raisins** _____.
10. The last **chapter** of the book _____.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a. as a snack before dinner | b. she had to get a new car |
| c. a disease that made her tired | d. has written many others as well |
| e. when the image comes into view | f. before you begin driving |
| g. was accidentally opened | h. was the most interesting |
| i. parents if you are late | j. too sour to eat |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. There were many items that the customer ordered, _____.
2. The manager was unhappy _____.
3. The meat had gone bad, _____.
4. Jay was rushed to the hospital, _____.
5. Her blouse was so colorful when she bought it, _____.
6. Judy danced beautifully, _____.
7. He tried to keep busy, _____.
8. Sammy tried to get through to the bathroom, _____.
9. He sold most of his clothes, _____.
10. Sarah became quite ill _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. but he retained his favorite shirt | b. but her unfortunate mistake hurt her |
| c. and it made many people vomit | d. but he always found himself being idle |
| e. so she put them on the tray | f. because the atmosphere was polluted |
| g. because no one stated the truth | h. so his aunt, dad, mom, etc met him there |
| i. but the aisle was crowded | j. but the vivid colors faded after a week |

Isaac's First Plane Trip

Isaac's family was going on vacation. He was excited about the trip except for one thing. He had never been on a plane before. He was scared that his plane would have a **breakdown**.

Isaac got onto the plane. He walked down the **aisle** until he found his seat. He sat down and **connected** the ends of his seat belt. After being **idle** for a few minutes, the pilot announced that they were ready to leave.

He looked out the window at the **vivid** colors of the sky. He began to feel scared. The girl sitting next to him said, "Hi, I'm Rachel! You look nervous, but you don't need to be. Flying is fun!"

"I'm still a bit nervous," Isaac said, "and I'm getting hungry."

"The food service will begin soon. Just lower the **tray** on the seat in front of you, and **flip** this switch. Then they'll bring your dinner! Last time, they served chicken, **peas**, and a box of **raisins**," Rachel explained.

Then the pilot **notified** the passengers of bad conditions in the **atmosphere**. "We're tracking the weather: lightning, clouds, **etc**. The ride might get a bit rough," he **stated**.

Suddenly, the plane started to shake. Isaac was badly **afflicted** by his fear. His stomach hurt, and he thought he might **vomit**. He couldn't believe that he was in such an **unfortunate** place. Finally, the shaking stopped. Isaac was still scared, but he tried to **retain** a good attitude.

"The first time I flew, the plane shook so bad that **cargo** started falling. My parents told me to listen to music and read a **chapter** in my book. It calmed me," Rachel said.

Suddenly, the plane shook again. This time, Isaac followed Rachel's advice. He put on headphones and took out a book by his favorite **author**. The book and the music helped Isaac feel better. After a while, he didn't even notice the bad weather. The bad situation didn't feel so bad after someone helped him.



اولین سفر آیزاک با هواپیما

خانواده اسحاق به تعطیلات می‌رفتند. او در مورد همه چیز سفر هیجان‌زده بود، به جز یک چیز و آن این‌که تا به حال هرگز سوار هواپیما نشده بود. او می‌ترسید که هواپیمایش دچار نقص فنی شود.

ایزاک سوار هواپیما شد. او در طول راهرو پایین رفت تا وقتی که صندلیش را پیدا کرد. او نشست و انتهای کمر بندش را به هم متصل کرد. خلبان پس از چند دقیقه بی‌کار نشستن اعلام کرد که آماده رفتن هستند.

ایزاک از پنجره به رنگ‌های روشن و واضح آسمان نگاه کرد. کم‌کم احساس وحشت کرد. دختری که کنارش نشسته بود گفت: "سلام، من ریچل هستم! تو عصبی به نظر می‌رسی، اما نیازی نیست که باشی. پرواز لذت بخش است!" ایزاک گفت: "من هنوز کمی عصبی هستم، و گرسنه‌ام."

این بار ریچل توضیح داد: "خدمات غذایی به زودی آغاز خواهد شد. فقط کافی است سینی را پایین بیاورید و روی صندلی جلوی شما کلید تعبیه شده را فشار دهید. سپس غذا را می‌آورند! آخرین بار، آن‌ها مرغ، نخود، و یک جعبه کشمش سرو کردند."

سپس خلبان به مسافران شرایط بد جوی را اطلاع داد و گفت: "ما آب و هوا را ردیابی می‌کنیم: رعد و برق، ابرها، و غیره ممکن است کمی پرواز را سخت کنند." ناگهان هواپیما شروع به لرزیدن کرد. ایزاک به شدت تحت‌تاثیر ترس خود قرار گرفته بود. شکمش درد می‌کرد، و فکر می‌کرد که ممکن است استفراغ کند. او نمی‌توانست باور کند که در چنین مکان بدی قرار گرفته. سرانجام لرزش متوقف شد. ایزاک هنوز ترسیده بود، اما تلاش کرد تا نگرش خودش را حفظ کند. ریچل گفت: "اولین باری که پرواز کردم هواپیما انقدر بد حرکت کرد که محموله شروع به افتادن کرد. والدینم به من گفتند که به موسیقی گوش دهم و فصلی از یک کتاب را بخوانم. مرا آرام کرد."

ناگهان هواپیما دوباره لرزید. این بار، ایزاک به نصیحت ریچل عمل کرد. او هدفونش را پوشید و کتابی را از نویسنده مورد علاقه‌اش مطالعه کرد. کتاب و موسیقی به ایزاک کمک کردند تا احساس بهتری داشته باشد. بعد از مدتی، حتی متوجه آب و هوای بد نشد. وضعیت بد، بعد از اینکه کسی به او کمک کرد دیگر خیلی هم بد نبود.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Isaac was scared the plane would have a breakdown.

2. ___ Isaac ate raisins and peas and read a book by his favorite author.

3. ___ Rachel's parents suggested she read a chapter in her book when she was scared.

4. ___ Isaac's fear went away as soon as he took a nap.

5. ___ The pilot stated that the conditions in the atmosphere were sun, wind, etc.

6. ___ Isaac was scared, but he tried to retain a good attitude.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What would happen if Isaac flipped the switch?
 - a. The cargo would fall.
 - b. They would bring him his dinner.
 - c. He would vomit.
 - d. They would bring him some water.
2. What did Isaac do as the plane left?
 - a. He played with Rachel.
 - b. He was idle.
 - c. He fell asleep.
 - d. He looked at the vivid sky.
3. What did Isaac think when the plane first started shaking?
 - a. He was in an unfortunate place.
 - b. He was afflicted by pain.
 - c. The pilot made a mistake.
 - d. His food would fall off the tray.
4. What happened the first time Rachel was on a plane?
 - a. The dinner service was late.
 - b. She had to wait in the aisle.
 - c. The cargo fell from above.
 - d. Her seat belt wasn't connected.

v.

betray

[bi'treɪ]

خیانت کردن



- ❖ To betray someone means to treat them in a dishonest way.
- The man betrayed his country when he gave away national secrets.
- زمانی که او رازهای ملی را فاش کرد، به کشورش خیانت کرد.

n.

blast

[bla:st]

انفجار



- ❖ A blast is a loud noise made by something that explodes.
- There was a loud blast when the police officer fired the gun.
- زمانی که پلیس شلیک کرد یک صدای بلند انفجار به گوش رسید.

n.

bracelet

['breɪslɪt]

دستبند، النگو



- ❖ A bracelet is a piece of jewelry that you wear around your wrist.
- My father gave me a pretty gold bracelet for my birthday.
- پدرم برای تولدم یک دستبند طلا به من داد.

v.

cease

[si:s]

متوقف کردن، دست کشیدن، ایستادن



- ❖ To cease means to stop.
- After about an hour, the rain ceased, and a rainbow appeared.
- پس از یک ساعت، باران متوقف و رنگین کمان پدیدار شد.

v.

choke

[tʃəuk]

خفه کردن، خفه شدن



- ❖ To choke means to cough because you have difficulty breathing.
- There was a lot of smoke in the air, and it made me choke.
- دود بسیاری در آسمان بود و باعث شد احساس خفگی کنم.

adj.

civil

['sɪv(ə)l]

داخلی، درونی، کشوری



- ❖ When an event is civil, it happens inside a country.
- The country was torn apart by a terrible civil war.
- کشور به واسطه ی جنگ داخلی چند تکه شد.

v.

comment

['kɒment]

نظر دادن



- ❖ To comment means to say something that shows your personal opinion.
- Tom commented on the poor quality of the food.
- تام در مورد کیفیت ضعیف غذا نظر داد.

v.

cross

[krɒs]

رد شدن، عبور کردن



- ❖ To cross means to go from one side to the other side.
- We used his boat to cross to the other side of the lake.
- ما از قایق او برای عبور از دریاچه استفاده کردیم.

n.

dent

[dent]

تو رفتگی، غر شدگی



- ❖ A dent is damage caused by something heavy hitting something else.
- That blue car hit my car, and now there is a small dent in my car door.
- آن ماشین آبی به ماشینم زد، و اکنون یک تو رفتگی بر روی در ماشینم وجود دارد.

v.

distrust

[dis'trust]

سو ظن داشتن، بدگمان بودن



- ❖ To distrust someone means to believe that they are not honest.
- Don't lend money to someone if you distrust them!
- اگر به کسی اعتماد ندارید، به او پول قرض ندهید.

n.

fort

[fɔ:t]

قلعه، دژ



- ❖ A fort is a small building that is specially built to defend an area from attack.
- When the army arrived, they built a big fort on the top of the hill.
- زمانی که ارتش رسید، آن ها یک قلعه ی بزرگ در بالای تپه ساختند.

v.

found

[faund]

تأسیس کردن، بنا کردن



- ❖ To found means to bring something into existence.
- The pastor founded his church in the countryside.
- کشیش کلیسای خود را در حومه ی شهر بنا کرد.

n.

lining

['laɪnɪŋ]

آستر



❖ lining is a piece of cloth that covers the inside of clothes.

➤ This jacket is very warm because it has a thick lining.

➤ این ژاکت بسیار گرم است چرا که آستر ضخیمی دارد.

n.

mass

[mæs]

حجم زیاد، کپه، انبوه



❖ A mass is a large number of things of one type.

➤ We received a mass of letters this morning.

➤ ما امروز صبح حجم زیادی نامه دریافت کردیم.

v.

pray

[preɪ]

دعا کردن، عبادت کردن



❖ To pray means to talk to God.

➤ When people go to church, they pray for their families and friends.

➤ زمانی که مردم به کلیسا می روند، برای دوستان و خانواده ی خود دعا می کنند.

adj.

rife

[raɪf]

شایع، فراوان، مملو



❖ If a place is rife with something bad, it is very common in that place.

➤ This part of the country is rife with disease.

➤ در این بخش از کشور بیماری شایع است.

adj.

sole

[səʊl]

تنها



- ❖ When something is the sole thing, it is the only thing of a particular type.
- His sole purpose in life was to help others.

➤ تنها هدف او در زندگی کمک به دیگران بود.

v.

sweep

[swi:p]

جارو زدن، جارو کردن



- ❖ If you sweep the floor, you clean it with a tool like a broom or a brush.
- There is a lot of dirt on the floor. Can you sweep it please?

➤ گرد و خاک زیادی روی زمین است. میشه لطفا آن را جارو کنید؟

n.

treachery

['treʃ(ə)rɪ]

خیانت، فریب



- ❖ treachery is a behavior in which a person betrays a country or a person.
- The man ran away to escape from the treachery of his wife.

➤ مرد برای فرار از خیانت همسرش فرار کرد.

v.

tuck

[tʌk]

تا کردن و تو زدن (لباس)، تو کردن



- ❖ To tuck something means to put it somewhere so that it is neat or safe.
- He looked sloppy without his shirt being tucked into his pants.

➤ بدون تو دادن تیشرت در شلوارش، شلخته به نظر رسید.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to clean with a broom
a. sweep b. betray c. pray d. choke
- to say your opinion
a. comment b. cross c. cease d. distrust
- to bring into existence
a. sole b. dent c. tuck d. found
- a piece of jewelry
a. civil b. bracelet c. mass d. fort
- a loud explosion
a. treachery b. blast c. rife d. lining

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- The lucky man was the only winner of the grand prize.

- She was so worried about her mother's health that she went to church to talk to God.

- He coughed and had difficulty breathing after eating a large piece of food.

- The rain stopped in the early morning after pouring all night long.

- There is a large number of people in the park today.

- I hit the wall with my car, and now there is a small amount of damage in it.

- I don't believe the honesty of people who always try to borrow money.

- The conditions in some parts of Africa are very poor, and disease is very common.

- The man behaved in an untrustworthy way toward his friends.

- I'm going to go to the other side of the road to meet my friend.

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. blast / choke

The _____ threw a lot of smoke into the air, and it made me _____.

2. treachery / fort

The army built a _____ to defend themselves from their former ally's _____.

3. sweep / tuck

My jobs at home are to _____ the floor and _____ the sheets neatly under the bed.

4. lining / sole

The homeless man's _____ possession was a jacket with a warm _____.

5. distrust / betray

I _____ those girls because they _____ their friends by telling their secrets.

6. ceased / founded

He _____ his business after the fighting from the war _____.

7. commented / civil

The man on the news _____ on the recent _____ struggles of the people.

8. bracelet / dent

Fiona stepped on my _____ and made a _____ in it.

9. cross / mass

I watched the _____ of people _____ the bridge to see the Queen.

10. prayed / rife

The country was _____ with enemies, so I _____ that our people would be safe.

The Betrayal

A king lived in a **fort** with his daughter, Clara. The king had **founded** a great empire, but his land was **rife** with enemies who wanted to take over the kingdom. Because there was so much **civil** unrest, the king told Clara not to trust anyone.

One day, Clara was walking outside when she saw a girl **sweeping** the path. Clara **crossed** the garden, and they started talking. The girl's name was Susie. Clara felt sorry for Susie because she was very poor, and Clara gave her a **bracelet**. After that, Susie and Clara met every day.

Once, the King saw them talking. He told Clara, "Don't talk to that girl. She could be an enemy."

"You can't **distrust** everyone," **commented** Clara. "She is my **sole** friend. It's OK to be friendly to people."

The King said, "Don't argue with me. Stay inside from now on, and talk to no one."

Clara felt lonely in the fort. But one day she saw Susie outside. She wrote her a note with a map showing a secret entrance to the fort. Clara wrote: "Come at night, and we can talk together. Don't show anybody this note." She threw the note to Susie, and Susie **tucked** it in the **lining** of her dress.

That night Clara waited for Susie. But she heard something ticking, and then a loud **blast**. She ran into the hall, and it was full of smoke, which made her **choke**. A **mass** of soldiers were there, fighting. Clara realized that Susie had **betrayed** her and given the map to her father's enemies. Clara **prayed** that everyone in the castle would be safe from her friend's **treachery**.

At last, the fighting **ceased**. Clara found her father in the hall with his soldiers. They had defeated their enemies, but there were **dents** in their armor from the heavy fighting. Clara told her father what she had done and promised never to disobey him again.



خیانت

یک پادشاه با دخترش کلارا در یک قلعه زندگی می‌کرد. پادشاه امپراطوری بزرگی را بنیان نهاده بود، اما سرزمین او پر از دشمنانی بود که می‌خواستند پادشاهی را تصرف کنند. پادشاه به کلارا گفته بود که به هیچ‌کس اعتماد نکند.

یک روز، وقتی کلارا بیرون می‌رفت، دختری را دید که مسیر را جارو می‌کرد. کلارا از باغ گذشت و شروع به صحبت کرد. اسم دختر سوزی بود. کلارا دلش برای سوزی سوخت، چون خیلی فقیر بود. او یک دست‌بند به سوزی داد. پس از آن، سوزی و کلارا هر روز همدیگر را می‌دیدند.

یک‌بار پادشاه آن‌ها را دید که حرف می‌زنند. او به کلارا گفت: " با آن دختر حرف نزن. او ممکن است دشمن باشد." کلارا گفت: " تو نمی‌توانی به هیچ‌کس اعتماد کنی. او تنها دوست من است. با مردم خیلی خوب است." پادشاه گفت: " با من بحث نکن. از همین حالا داخل قصر بمان و با هیچ‌کس حرف نزن." کلارا در قلعه احساس تنهایی می‌کرد. ولی یک روز سوزی را بیرون دید. او یادداشتی برایش نوشت که یک ورودی مخفی به قلعه را نشان می‌داد. کلارا نوشت: " امشب بیا، می‌توانیم با هم حرف بزنیم. این یادداشت را به کسی نشان نده." او یادداشت را به سوزی داد و سوزی آن را در آستر پیراهنش گذاشت.

آن شب کلارا منتظر سوزی ماند. اما صدای تیک زدن چیزی را شنید و بعد صدای انفجاری بلند شد. به تالار دوید که پر از دودی بود که داشت خفه‌اش می‌کرد. انبوهی از سربازان آنجا بودند. کلارا پی برد که سوزی به او خیانت کرده و نقشه را به دشمنان پدرش داده‌است. کلارا دعا می‌کرد که همه در قلعه از خیانت دوستش در امان باشند.

سرانجام نبرد متوقف شد. کلارا پدر خود را با سربازانش در سالن یافت. آن‌ها دشمنان خود را شکست داده بودند، اما شکاف‌هایی در زره آن‌ها از نبرد سنگین حکایت می‌کرد. کلارا به پدرش گفت که چه کرده و قول داد که دیگر نافرمانی نکند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ The land near the king's fort was rife with disease.

2. ____ When Clara and Susie met, Clara was sweeping the path.

3. ____ Clara crossed the garden to talk to Susie.

4. ____ Clara gave Susie a bracelet.

5. ____ Clara commented to her father that he should distrust people.

6. ____ Clara choked because of the smoke.

PART B Answer the questions.

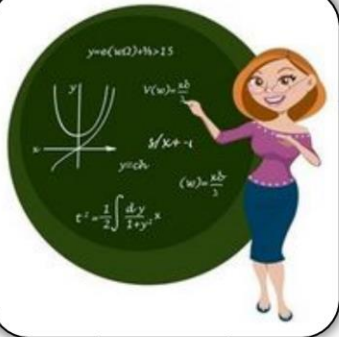
1. Which of the following actions did Clara do in the story?
 - a. Sweep the path
 - b. Betray her sole friend
 - c. Found a clock ticking
 - d. Pray
2. What did Clara hear in the middle of the night?
 - a. Civil fighting
 - b. A loud blast
 - c. Susie calling at the window
 - d. Someone sweeping
3. What did the king emphasize?
 - a. Anybody could be an enemy.
 - b. Clara should be friendly to people.
 - c. He distrusted his relatives.
 - d. His enemy's treachery had ceased.
4. Where were the mass of soldiers fighting?
 - a. In the garden
 - b. In the hall
 - c. In the King's bedroom
 - d. Outside Clara's window

n.

background ['bækgraʊnd]

سابقه، پیشینه، زمینه

- ❖ A background is a person's education, family, and experience.
- The new teacher had a background in science and math.
- معلم جدید در علوم پایه و ریاضیات سابقه داشت.



n.

bait [beɪt]

طعمه

- ❖ bait is something used to trick a person or thing to do something.
- The best bait for catching fish is a big, fat worm.
- بهترین طعمه برای ماهیگیری یک کرم بزرگ و چاق است.



v.

chronicle ['krɒnɪkl]

شرح وقایع، بازگو کردن

- ❖ To chronicle something means to record an event or speech.
- The daily newspaper chronicles local and world events.
- روزنامه های روزانه، وقایع محلی و بین المللی را بازگو می کنند.



n.

copper ['kɒpə]

مس

- ❖ copper is a red-brown metal often used in electric wire and pipes.
- Ancient hunters melted copper to make knives and spears.
- شکارچیان قدیم برای درست کردن چاقو و نیزه مس را آب می کردند.



n.

disease

[di'zi:z]

بیماری



- ❖ A disease is an illness that causes specific problems.
- He had a disease that caused him to lose his hearing.
- او بیماری داشت که موجب از دست دادن شنوایی اش شد.

n.

folklore

['fəʊklɔ:]

فرهنگ عامه، رسوم اجدادی



- ❖ folklore is the collection of beliefs and stories of a culture.
- India's folklore has stories written in long poems about great warriors.
- رسوم اجدادی هند داستان هایی نوشته شده به صورت شعر در مورد جنگجویان بزرگ دارد.

v.

infect

[in'fekt]

بیمار کردن، آلوده کردن، سرایت کردن



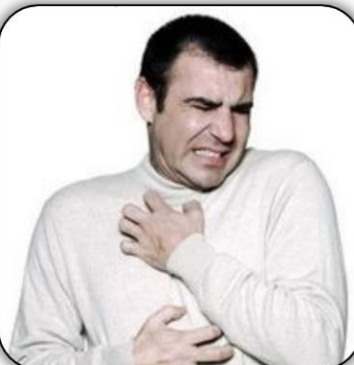
- ❖ To infect someone means to give them an illness.
- The common cold infects hundreds of millions of people each year.
- سرماخوردگی سالانه میلیون ها نفر را مبتلا می کند.

v.

itch

[itʃ]

خاراندن، خاریدن



- ❖ To itch means to rub the skin with your fingernails.
- The rough fabric in his shirt made the back of his neck itch.
- پارچه ی زبر تی شرت او موجب شد که پشت گردنش بخارد.



n.

literature

['lɪt(ə)rətʃə]

ادبیات



❖ literature is books, plays, and poetry.

➤ Early American literature covers the poetry and stories from 1500 to 1800.

➤ ادبیات آمریکای قدیم، اشعار و داستان های سال 1500 تا 1800 را در بر می گیرد.

n.

millennium

[mɪ'lenɪəm]

هزاره، هزار سال



❖ A millennium is one thousand years.

➤ Stonehenge is believed to have been built about 5 millennia ago.

➤ این باور وجود دارد که استون هنج نزدیک به پنج هزاره ی پیش ساخته شده است.

n.

myth

[mɪθ]

افسانه، اسطوره



❖ A myth is a traditional story that explains a culture's history and beliefs.

➤ In Greece, there was a myth about a woman who had snakes for hair.

➤ در یونان، افسانه ای وجود داشت که یک زن به جای مو مار روی سرش داشته است.

v.

promote

[prə'məʊt]

ترفیع دادن، ارتقا دادن



❖ To promote someone means to raise them to a higher position or rank.

➤ After two years in the company, she was promoted to a manager.

➤ بعد از دو سال کار در شرکت، او به پست مدیریت ارتقا یافت.

v.

relate

[ri'leit]

مربوط بودن، ربط داشتن



- ❖ To relate to something means to have a connection with it.
- A company's plan usually relates to how much profit it can make.
- معمولا برنامه ی شرکت مرتبط با سود دهی آن می باشد.

n.

religion

[ri'lɪdʒ(ə)n]

دین، مذهب



- ❖ A religion is a belief in a god or gods.
- Their religion taught that people should forgive their enemies.
- مذهب آن ها بر این باور بود که مردم باید دشمنانشان را ببخشند.

n.

sum

[sʌm]

حاصل جمع، مجموع



- ❖ A sum is a specific amount of money.
- He calculated the numbers to see what the sum of his bills would be.
- او اعداد را محاسبه کرد تا ببیند جمع قبوض او چقدر می شود.

n.

teller

['telə]

تحویله‌دار، صندوقدار



- ❖ A teller is a person who works with a bank's customers.
- The teller at the bank helped Kelly put money into a savings account.
- متصدی بانک در واریز پول به حساب پس انداز به کلی کمک کرد.

adj.

trustworthy ['trʌst,wɜ:ðɪ]

قابل اعتماد، امین



- ❖ If someone is trustworthy, they are honest and truthful.
- Mary is one of the most trustworthy people I've ever met.
- ماری یکی از قابل اعتمادترین افرادی است که تا به حال دیده ام.

v.

update ['ʌpdeɪt]

به روز کردن، ارتقا دادن، آپدیت کردن



- ❖ To update something means to make it more modern.
- We need to update the programs on our computers.
- باید برنامه های کامپیوتر را به روز رسانی کنیم.

n.

vein [veɪn]

رگ، سیاهرگ



- ❖ A vein is a tube in the body that carries blood toward the heart.
- The blue veins in my hand are just under my skin.
- رگ من دقیقا زیر پوستم می باشد.

n.

venom ['venəm]

زهر، سم



- ❖ venom is a poisonous substance that comes from animals or plants.
- A snake's venom can be used to cure the illnesses it creates.
- زهر مار می تواند برای درمان بیماری هایی که ایجاد می کند، استفاده شود.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The reward for finding the lost dog was a very large specific amount.

2. When his arm got crushed, it damaged a tube that carries blood to the heart was damaged.

3. To which chart does this collection of data have a connection with?

4. This book records the first years of the king's life.

5. Since that pot is made out of a red-brown metal, it gets hot very quickly.

6. The nation had a party because their country had existed for a thousand years.

7. Her experience made her the best person for the new job.

8. The poisonous substance from that fish will make you very sick.

9. I wouldn't believe him. He's not very honest.

10. The owners of the hotel decided to modernize the computer system.

Exercise 2

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. What do you need if you want to catch a fish?
a. Copper b. Venom c. Bait d. Disease
2. Which of the following means to be raised to a higher position?
a. Chronicle b. Update c. Infect d. Promote
3. Which would most likely be found in a library?
a. Literature b. A teller c. A vein d. Religion
4. Sometimes, uncomfortable clothes will make you do this?
a. Itch b. Trustworthy c. Relate d. Background
5. Which of the following best describes the combination of two numbers?
a. A sum b. A millennium c. Folklore d. A myth

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. The bank teller _____.
2. Many religions _____.
3. The nation's folklore _____.
4. The factory's new worker had a **background** _____.
5. Those **veins** pump blood _____.
6. The snake's poisonous **venom** _____.
7. The newspaper story **chronicled** the action _____.
8. One of that culture's **myths** explains that the ocean _____.
9. The total **sum** for staying three nights at the hotel _____!
10. Her arm started to **itch** _____.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| a. caused the boy to collapse | b. to all necessary places in the body |
| c. was once a small pond | d. was over \$300 |
| e. in engineering | f. deposited Paul's money into his account |
| g. from all of the insect bites | h. of the heroic crime-fighter |
| i. believe that there is a god | j. is rich with tradition |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. If you don't stay away from school today, _____.
2. Because the calendar didn't list the new holidays, _____.
3. The hunters put some food in the trap, _____.
4. She learned to speak the country's language, _____.
5. The police thought the two crimes might be connected, _____.
6. The pipes were safe for carrying water _____.
7. He had done great work for the company for three years, _____.
8. She never shared her friends' secrets with anyone, _____.
9. If you think a lot can happen in a hundred years, _____.
10. He had a bad cough and a headache, _____.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. because they were made from copper | b. but no animals wanted the bait |
| c. so everyone knew she was trustworthy | d. it had to be updated |
| e. then you might infect the other students | f. so she could read their literature |
| g. so he thought he'd caught a disease | h. so his boss promoted him |
| i. but it turned out that they didn't relate to each other | |
| j. then imagine how much might happen in a millennium | |

The Teller and the Thieves

A **teller** at a bank suspected some of her fellow employees of not being very **trustworthy**. She thought they were stealing. In order to catch them, though, she needed some way to link them to the crime.

She had a **background** in **religion** and **folklore**. She remembered that one religion's **literature** had a **myth** that **chronicled** how a group of thieves was captured.

In the **millennium**-old story, coins of **copper** were covered with **venom** taken from a poisonous snake. The coins were left as **bait** for the robbers. When they touched the coins, the venom **infected** their bodies through their skin. The venom ran through their **veins**, and they all became very sick as if they had a **disease**. It made their skin purple. The police arrested whoever had purple skin.



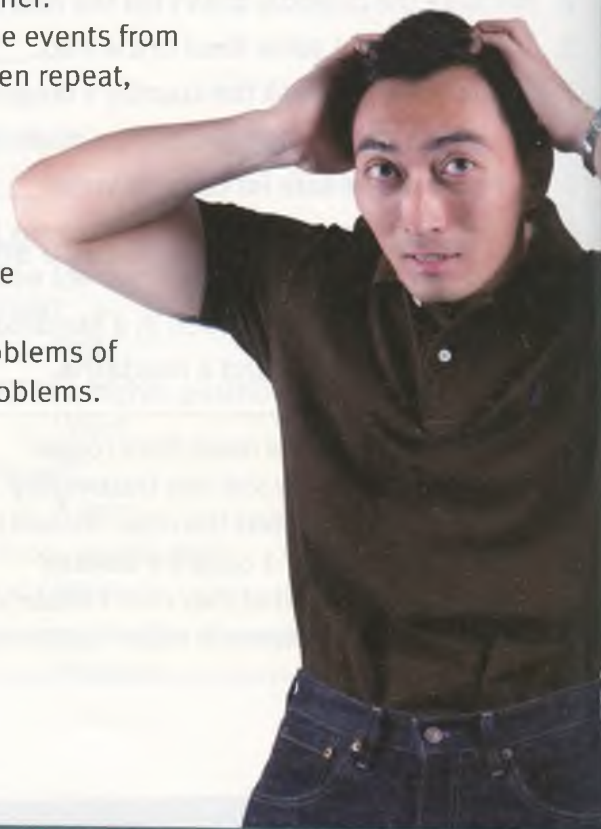
She knew she couldn't use venom because it might hurt someone. However, she thought of a way to **update** the old story. She decided to cover a **sum** of money with a special powder. If people touched the money, the powder would cause their skin to **itch**. She placed the stack of money in the bank's safe. No one was supposed to take money from the safe. If somebody did, then they had to be stealing.

Within a few hours, three of her coworkers were scratching their hands and arms. They itched so badly that they couldn't even work. She checked the money, and it was gone. She told her boss what she had done, and he had the thieves arrested. He thanked her and **promoted** her.

Because events from history often repeat, ancient literature had helped

the teller solve

a crime. She proved that stories from the past still **relate** with the problems of today, and they can be helpful in solving problems.



تحویلهدار و دزدها

یک تحویلهدار بانک به برخی از همکاران خود مشکوک بود مبنی بر این که قابل اعتماد نیستند. او فکر می کرد که آن ها دزدی کرده اند. با این حال، برای دستگیری آن ها به راهی برای پیوند دادن آن ها به جرم نیاز داشت.

او یک پس زمینه در مذهب و فرهنگ عامه داشت. او به خاطر داشت که ادبیات یک دین افسانه ای داشته که شرح وقایع گروهی از دزدان را در آن ثبت کرده اند.

در داستان هزار ساله، سکه های مسی با زهر مار سمی پوشانده شده بودند. سکه ها به عنوان طعمه برای دزدان باقی مانده بود. وقتی آن ها سکه ها را لمس کردند، سم بدنشان را از طریق پوست آن ها آلوده می کرد. زهر در رگ های آن ها جاری شده و همه آن ها به شدت مریض می شدند، انگار که یک بیماری داشتند. پوست آن ها بنفش ارغوانی می شد. سپس پلیس هر کسی که پوست ارغوانی داشت را دستگیر می کرد.

او می دانست که نمی تواند از سم استفاده کند چون ممکن است به کسی آسیب برساند. با این حال، او به راهی برای به روز کردن داستان قدیمی فکر کرد. او تصمیم گرفت که مقداری پول را با یک پودر ویژه پوشش دهد. اگر مردم پول را لمس کنند، پودر باعث خارش پوست آن ها می شود. او دسته پول را در صندوق بانک گذاشت. هیچ کس انتظار نداشت که از گاو صندوق پول بگیرد. اگر کسی این کار را می کرد، قاعدتاً یعنی دزدی کرده بود.

در عرض چند ساعت، سه تن از همکارانش دست و بازوهای خود را می خاراندند. آن ها به قدری خارش داشتند که حتی نمی توانستند کار کنند. او پول را چک کرد و پول سرچایش نبود. او به رئیسش گفت که چه کار کرده است و رئیس ترتیب دستگیری دزدها را داد. سپس از او تشکر کرد و او را ارتقا داد.

از آنجا که وقایع تاریخی اغلب تکرار می شوند، ادبیات باستانی به تحویلهدار کمک کرده بود که یک جرم را حل کند. او ثابت کرد که داستان های گذشته هنوز با مشکلات امروزی همخوانی دارند و می توانند در حل مشکلات مفید باشند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ A teller at a bank thought her fellow employees were trustworthy.

2. ____ The teller remembered a myth that chronicled how to capture the thieves.

3. ____ The venom was taken from a poisonous plant.

4. ____ The robbers became sick as if they had a disease.

5. ____ Two of her coworkers were scratching their hands and arms.

6. ____ The teller's boss promoted her.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which word does NOT describe the teller's background?

- a. Religion
- b. Literature
- c. Folklore
- d. Vein

2. In the millennium-old story, the police linked the robbers to the crime because _____.

- a. they were purple
- b. their skin itched
- c. they weren't working
- d. they were at the bank

3. What did the teller use as bait to catch her fellow employees?

- a. Coins of copper
- b. A special powder
- c. A sum of money
- d. The bank's safe

4. Why did the teller decide not to use venom in her trap?

- a. It wasn't related.
- b. It infected her.
- c. It was updated.
- d. It might hurt someone.

n.

charity

['tʃærɪti]

کمک مالی



- ❖ charity is an act of giving help, usually money, to those who need it.
- Thanks to his friends' charity, he had enough money to pay the rent.
- با تشکر از کمک دوستانش، او حالا پول کافی برای پرداخت اجاره داشت.

n.

commerce

['kɒmɜːs]

بازرگانی، تجارت



- ❖ commerce is the activity of buying and selling things.
- The new shopping mall increased the commerce in that section of town.
- مرکز خرید جدید باعث افزایش تجارت در آن بخش از شهر شد.

v.

condemn

[kən'dem]

محکوم کردن



- ❖ To condemn someone means to give them a specific punishment.
- The judge condemned the criminal to five years in prison.
- قاضی مجرم را به 5 سال زندان محکوم کرد.

adj.

cozy

['kəʊzi]

دنج، گرم و نرم



- ❖ If something is cozy, then it is comfortable, warm, and relaxing.
- The thick blanket made the bed very cozy.
- پتوی ضخیم، تخت را بسیار گرم و نرم کرد.

v.

deplete

[di'pli:t]

تمام کردن، خالی کردن، به ته رساندن



- ❖ To deplete an amount of something means to use up all of it.
- All the driving he was doing was depleting his car's fuel supply.
- با ماشین سواری زیاد، کل سوخت ماشینش تمام شد.

n.

economy

[i'kɒnəmi]

اقتصاد



- ❖ An economy is the money and businesses of a country or region.
- The factory was good for the economy because it brought jobs to the area.
- این کارخانه برای اقتصاد مفید بود چرا که موجب ایجاد شغل در این منطقه شد.

n.

empire

['empaɪə]

امپراطوری



- ❖ An empire is a large group of countries ruled by an emperor or empress.
- The emperor built roads to make travel easier throughout the empire.
- امپراطور جاده هایی را برای سفر آسان در سراسر امپراطوری ساخت.

n.

goods

[gudz]

کالا



- ❖ goods are anything that can be bought or sold.
- Shoes, hats, dresses and purses were the goods she wanted to buy.
- کفش، کلاه، لباس و کیف، کالاهایی بود که او می خواست بخرد.

v.

heed

[hi:d]

توجه کردن



- ❖ To heed something means to obey or follow it.
- You should heed the advice on the sign and not drive so fast.
- شما باید به توصیه ی علائم توجه کنید و تند نرانید.

v.

hitchhike

['hɪtʃhaɪk]

مجانی سواری کردن، مفتی رفتن، رایگان سفر کردن



- ❖ To hitchhike means to travel by asking for rides from passing vehicles.
- She didn't have a car, so she hitchhiked several miles to her brother's home.
- او ماشین نداشت، بنابراین او مایل ها تا خانه ی برادرش رایگان سواری کرد.

v.

mock

[mɒk]

دست انداختن، مسخره کردن



- ❖ To mock someone means to tease them in a cruel way.
- The girls mocked Nancy because she was a new student.
- دختر نانسی را تمسخر کرد، چرا که او دانش آموز جدید بود.

adj.

neutral

['nju:tr(ə)]

بی طرف



- ❖ If someone is neutral, then they do not help either of the two fighting sides.
- The girl's friend remained neutral while the couple was arguing.
- دوستان دختر هنگام دعوی زن و شوهری بی طرف ماندند.

v.

persecute

['pɜːsɪkjʊːt]

اذیت و آزار کردن، شکنجه کردن



- ❖ To persecute means to treat someone badly.
- Dan felt persecuted because he was smaller than the other boys at school.
- دن احساس آزار کرد، چرا که او کوتاه تر از سایر بچه های مدرسه بود.

n.

pity

['pɪtɪ]

دلسوزی، ترحم



- ❖ pity is the feeling of sadness and kindness for those who are suffering.
- Because she had pity for the lost boy, she helped him find his parents.
- برای حس ترحمی که به پسر گمشده داشت، به او کمک کرد تا خانواده اش را پیدا کند.

v.

reduce

[rɪ'djuːs]

کاهش دادن، کم کردن



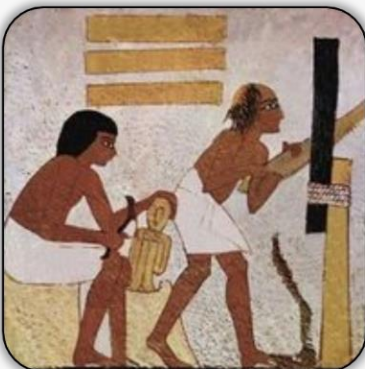
- ❖ To reduce something means to make it less in size or number.
- When the store reduced its prices, people wanted to shop there.
- زمانی که مغازه قیمت هایش را کاهش داد، مردم می خواستند از آن جا خرید کنند.

n.

scribe

[skraɪb]

کاتب، منشی



- ❖ A scribe was a person whose job was to copy written works.
- In Ancient Egypt, scribes recorded important events.
- در مصر باستان، کاتبان وقایع مهم را یادداشت کردند.



n.

temper

['tempə]

خشم

- ❖ A temper is someone's mood or a chance that they might get angry.
- She has a temper. Even the slightest mistakes make her angry.
- او خشم داشت، حتی کوچکترین اشتباهی او را عصبانی می کرد.



n.

throne

[θrəun]

تخت پادشاهی

- ❖ A throne is the special chair in which a ruler sits.
- Nobody except the king and queen sat in the thrones in the great hall.
- هیچ کس به جز پادشاه و ملکه بر روی تخت سالن بزرگ نمی نشست.



n.

unity

['ju:nəti]

اتحاد، وحدت

- ❖ unity is the state of people working together for a certain purpose.
- The project was finished early, thanks to the unity of the workers.
- پروژه به سرعت انجام شد، از اتحاد کارکنان متشکریم.



n.

victor

['viktə]

پیروز، قهرمان، برنده

- ❖ A victor is a group or person that wins in a contest.
- At the end of the game, the blue team was the victor.
- در پایان بازی، تیم آبی برنده شد.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. **mocking / temper**

The other children were _____ him about how funny his new shoes looked, and it didn't take long for him to develop a bad _____.

2. **scribes / unity**

The _____ realized that they could copy more books if they stopped arguing and worked in _____.

3. **cozy / hitchhiked**

The young man _____ in the cold without getting a ride for such a long time. When a car finally picked him up, the soft seat and warm air was very _____.

4. **charity / goods**

The _____ they received was not only money but also several, _____ such as food and clothing.

5. **heeded / neutral**

The senators _____ the warning from the countries' leaders and decided to stay _____ in the war.

6. **commerce / empire**

The ancient _____ that we studied in class today was very important because it spread _____ and trade throughout the world.

7. **throne / victor**

The king's two sons had to fight to see who would become the next king. Whoever was the _____ would get to sit upon his father's _____.

8. **pity / reduced**

The cold and dirt had _____ the poor man's clothing to almost nothing, and the mayor felt _____ for him and took him home to his house.

9. **economy / persecuted**

The businessmen _____ the students because they didn't agree with his opinions concerning the _____.

10. **condemned / depleted**

The men had _____ the small lake of all its fish and were _____ to going without fish for many years.

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Appliances are things that are bought that usually last for many years.

2. After making five cakes, all the sugar in the house was used up.

3. During the holidays, offering financial help to others is very common.

4. Because my views were different, I was treated badly by my classmates.

5. The group that wins this game will have to play the very best team.

6. When his car ran out of gas, he traveled by asking for rides to the gas station.

7. Though it might seem like fun at the time, it's not nice to tease in a cruel way people.

8. The warm weather lessened the snow that covered the ground.

9. The state of working together the groups showed helped them to solve their problems.

10. The many countries ruled by one person was beginning to slowly fall apart.

Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Who is someone who would NOT sit on a throne?
a. A king b. A queen c. A chef d. An emperor
2. All of the following describe something that's cozy EXCEPT _____.
a. relaxing b. large c. comfortable d. warm
3. What is something that you might need?
a. Food b. Money c. Fun d. Advice
4. If someone can't control their temper, then they are likely to easily become _____.
a. upset b. proud c. happy d. sleepy
5. Which of the following is something a scribe would use?
a. Goods b. An oven c. A pen d. Nails

The Scribe's Warning

A great and powerful **empire** needed the wood from its western areas to build palaces and homes for the emperor and his friends. However, the empire had **depleted** many of the forests. The trees were important to the western areas' **economy**. With no trees to sell, the **commerce** in that area was **reduced**. Citizens could no longer purchase the **goods** that they needed to survive. Their life became difficult.

A poor **scribe** from the area wanted to help. He **hitchhiked** to the capital to ask the emperor for **charity**. He was invited to the palace. It was large and **cozy**. Tables were loaded with food, and fires burned warmly in every fireplace.

The emperor sat up upon his **throne**, and the scribe stood in front of him.

"I've come to ask for help," the scribe said. "We're all very poor and hungry. You've used up all of the forests, and now we have nothing to sell."

Then he added a warning. "If we don't receive help, I'm afraid that the entire empire will suffer. We must establish some **unity**."

Upon hearing the scribe's request, the emperor's bad **temper** surfaced. He **mocked** the scribe. "You think I should help," he said and laughed. "You should just be happy to belong to this great empire. You will get nothing from me."

The emperor felt no **pity** for the citizens of the western area. They were **condemned** to starve. The scribe returned home with nothing.

Not long after, an enemy invaded the empire from the west. They were marching to the capital. Because the citizens felt **persecuted** by the emperor, they remained **neutral**. They didn't fight the invaders but allowed them to march freely to the capital.

The emperor was defeated. If he had **heeded** the words of the scribe, then the citizens might have been the **victors**. But because he had treated them badly, they treated him badly in return.



هشدار منشی

امپراطوری بزرگ و قدرتمندی برای ساختن کاخ و خانه برای امپراطور و دوستانش به چوب نیاز داشت. با این حال، امپراطوری بسیاری از جنگل‌ها را تخلیه کرده بود. درختان برای اقتصاد نواحی غربی مهم بودند. وقتی دیگر هیچ درختی برای فروش باقی نماند، تجارت در آن منطقه کاهش یافت. شهروندان دیگر نمی‌توانستند کالاهای مورد نیاز برای زنده ماندن را بخرند. زندگی آن‌ها دشوار شد.

یک منشی بیچاره اهل همان منطقه می‌خواست کمک کند. به پایتخت بازگشت تا از امپراطور درخواست کمک کند. او را به قصر دعوت کردند. قصر بزرگ و دنجی بود. میزها پر از غذا بود و آتش در هر شومینه می‌سوخت.

امپراطور روی تخت پادشاهی نشست و منشی در مقابل او ایستاد. وی گفت: " من برای درخواست کمک آمده‌ام. ما خیلی فقیر و گرسنه هستیم. شما از همه جنگل‌ها استفاده کرده‌اید و حالا چیزی برای فروش نداریم. او هشدار داد که اگر کمک دریافت نکنیم، می‌ترسم که کل امپراطوری رنج ببرد. باید وحدتی ایجاد کنیم." با شنیدن درخواست منشی، خشم امپراطور آشکار شد. او منشی را مسخره کرد و گفت: " فکر می‌کنید من باید کمک کنم؟ باید خوشحال باشی که به این امپراطوری بزرگ تعلق داری. چیزی از من نخواهید گرفت." امپراطور نسبت به شهروندان منطقه غربی رحم نداشت. همه محکوم به گرسنگی بودند. منشی بدون هیچ کمکی به خانه بازگشت.

طولی نکشید که دشمن از غرب به امپراتوری حمله کرد. آن‌ها به سوی پایتخت پیش می‌رفتند. چون شهروندان تحت تعقیب امپراطور بودند، بی‌طرف باقی ماندند. آن‌ها با مهاجمان نمی‌جنگیدند بلکه اجازه دادند آزادانه به پایتخت بروند.

امپراطور شکست‌خورده بود. اگر به سخنان منشی توجهی کرده بود، ممکن بود شهروندان فاتح باشند. اما چون با آن‌ها بدرفتاری کرده بود، در عوض با او بدرفتاری کردند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ___ Much of the forest had been depleted by the empire.

2. ___ The sheep were important to the western areas' economy.

3. ___ The scribe hitchhiked to the capital to ask the emperor for charity.

4. ___ The scribe sat upon his throne, and the emperor stood in front of him.

5. ___ The emperor condemned the citizens of the western areas to hard work.

6. ___ If the emperor had heeded the scribe's warning, the citizens might have been the victors.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why were the citizens hungry?
 - a. Commerce was high.
 - b. They couldn't buy goods.
 - c. Prices were reduced.
 - d. They were too cozy.
2. The emperor's palace was all of the following EXCEPT _____.
 - a. large and cozy
 - b. made with wood
 - c. cold and dark
 - d. in the capital
3. When the emperor heard the scribe's request, how did he behave?
 - a. He felt pity.
 - b. He asked for unity.
 - c. He remained neutral.
 - d. He showed his temper.
4. At the end of the story, what happened to the emperor?
 - a. He was defeated.
 - b. He changed his evil ways.
 - c. He became rich.
 - d. He got married



adj.

accurate

['ækjərət]

دقیق، صحیح

❖ If something is accurate, it is completely correct.

➤ The story in the newspaper wasn't very accurate.

➤ داستان های روزنامه خیلی دقیق نبودند.



v.

analyze

['æn(ə)laɪz]

تحلیل کردن، آنالیز کردن

❖ To analyze something is to study it.

➤ The scientist will analyze the blood sample.

➤ دانشمند نمونه ی خون را آنالیز خواهد کرد.



n.

asteroid

['æst(ə)rɔɪd]

سیارک

❖ An asteroid is a giant rock from outer space.

➤ In 1908, a giant asteroid hit Siberia.

➤ در سال 1980، یک هواپیمای جنگی غول پیکر با سیبری برخورد کرد.



n.

controversy

['kɒntrəvɜːsi]

جنگال، مشاجره

❖ A controversy is a dispute about something that affects many people.

➤ There has been a lot of controversy over the judge's decision.

➤ در مورد تصمیم قاضی بحث های بسیاری وجود داشت.



v.

evolve

[i'vɒlv]

تکامل یافتن، تحول یافتن



- ❖ To evolve is to change over time. (To develop; to come forth)
- Many people think that humans evolved from animals.
- بسیاری از مردم فکر می کنند که انسان ها تکامل یافته ی حیوانات هستند.

n.

factor

['fæktə]

فاکتور، عامل



- ❖ A factor is something that has an effect on the way another thing happens.
- Smoking is the main factor that causes lung cancer.
- سیگار کشیدن یکی از عوامل اصلی سرطان ریه می باشد.

adj.

genetic

[dʒi'netɪk]

ژنتیکی



- ❖ If something is genetic, it is related to the genes in one's body.
- The color of one's eyes is genetic.
- رنگ چشم افراد ژنتیکی می باشد.

n.

genome

['dʒi:nəʊm]

(زیست شناسی) ژنوم



- ❖ A genome is the collection of all the genes in a living thing.
- Understanding the human genome may help cure many diseases.
- درک ژنوم انسان به درمان بسیاری از بیماری ها کمک می کند.

v.

identical

[aɪ'dentɪk(ə)l]

همانند، همسان، یکسان



- ❖ To be identical is to be the same as someone or something else.
- James and John are identical twins.

➤ جیمز و جان دوقلوهای همسان هستند.

n.

intellectual

[ˌɪnt(ə)'lektʃuəl]

فرهیخته، خردمند، عاقل



- ❖ An intellectual is a very smart person.
- We've always considered my Uncle Max the intellectual of the family.
- ما همیشه عمو مکس را به عنوان فرهیخته ی خانواده می شناختیم.

n.

majority

[mə'dʒɔrəti]

اکثریت



- ❖ A majority of something is almost all of the people or things in that group.
- A majority of the people voted for Tom Smith in the election.
- اکثریت مردم در انتخابات به تام اسمیت رای دادند.

n.

mammal

['mæm(ə)l]

پستاندار



- ❖ A mammal is an animal that usually has hair and is not born from an egg.
- Even though it lives in the water, whales are actually mammals.
- اگر چه وال ها در آب زندگی می کنند، اما پستاندار هستند.

v.

multiply

['mʌltɪplaɪ]

ضرب کردن، افزوده شدن



- ❖ To multiply is to increase in number.
- In the past year, the number of people at work multiplied by ten percent.
- در سال گذشته، افراد مشغول به کار 10 درصد افزایش یافتند.

n.

offspring

['ɒfsprɪŋ]

فرزند، توله حیوانات، کره



- ❖ offspring are the children of a person or the babies of an animal.
- The dog's offspring had the same color of fur as she did.
- توله ی سگ خزهایی هم رنگ مادرش داشت.

n.

pesticide

['pestɪsaɪd]

آفت کش



- ❖ A pesticide is a substance used to kill insects.
- The farmer sprayed his crops with a pesticide to keep bugs away.
- کشاورز برای دور کردن حشرات به محصولات خود آفت کش زد.

v.

regulate

['regjələɪt]

تنظیم کردن



- ❖ To regulate something is to control how it happens.
- The bank regulates how much money people can borrow from it.
- بانک مقدار پولی را که مردم می توانند از آن وام بگیرند را تعیین می کند.

v.

reinforce

[ˌriːnˈfɔːs]

تقویت کردن



- ❖ To reinforce something is to make it stronger.
- Peter reinforced his opinion with information from a book.
- پیتر ایده اش را با استفاده از اطلاعات کتاب تقویت کرد.

adj.

stricken

['stri:k(ə)n]

مبتلا، آسیب دیده



- ❖ If one is stricken by a disease or problem, they are badly affected by it.
- Mike was stricken with a horrible illness.
- مایک به یک بیماری وحشتناک مبتلا شده بود.

adj.

vast

[vɑːst]

وسیع، پهناور



- ❖ If something is vast, it is very large.
- The wealthy man bought a vast amount of land in the countryside.
- مرد ثروتمند، زمین های بسیاری را در حومه ی شهر خرید.

n.

vegetarian

[ˌvedʒɪˈteəriən]

گیاهخوار



- ❖ A vegetarian is someone who does not eat any meat products.
- I became a vegetarian because I don't like the taste of meat.
- به دلیل اینکه طعم گوشت را دوست ندارم، گیاه خوار شدم.

Exercise 1

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. A professor at a university is probably _____.
 - a. a majority
 - b. an intellectual
 - c. a controversy
 - d. a factor
2. If every member of a family has a disease, the disease is _____.
 - a. accurate
 - b. identical
 - c. vast
 - d. genetic
3. What would a farmer do if bugs were eating his plants?
 - a. Use a pesticide
 - b. Find a mammal
 - c. Raise offspring
 - d. Become a vegetarian
4. What is something that scientists do?
 - a. Analyze chemicals
 - b. Multiply books
 - c. Reinforce messages
 - d. Regulate businesses
5. Which word is related to the term "outer space"?
 - a. Stricken
 - b. Evolve
 - c. Genome
 - d. Asteroid
6. What happens when something evolves?
 - a. It studies more.
 - b. It disagrees.
 - c. It changes.
 - d. It gets stronger.
7. Which of these is a mammal?
 - a. A chicken
 - b. A snake
 - c. A spider
 - d. A monkey
8. What would a vegetarian eat?
 - a. Steak
 - b. Sausage
 - c. Chicken
 - d. Corn
9. If something is accurate, it is _____.
 - a. long
 - b. false
 - c. correct
 - d. mysterious
10. Which of these is usually considered vast?
 - a. The sky
 - b. A bedroom
 - c. A pool
 - d. The newspaper

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. The cheaper blouse is nearly **identical** _____.
2. The zoo is full of **mammals** _____.
3. The computer has **evolved** from _____.
4. My teacher said that **asteroids** _____.
5. Many **pesticides** that are used on _____.
6. The woman **reinforced** her statement _____.
7. The doctor **analyzes** the daily report _____.
8. The **vast** space of the room was _____.
9. My report on animal **genomes** _____.
10. The accident left her **stricken** _____.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| a. will be printed in a science textbook | b. about each patient |
| c. with two broken legs and an injured arm | d. that come from all over the world |
| e. with an example from a scientific study | f. a big machine to a tiny one |
| g. to the one I found in that expensive store | h. are made of rock, ice and metal |
| i. big enough to fit at least 5,000 people | j. crops cause illnesses in humans |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. A small group of kids wanted pizza, _____.
2. I don't read gossip magazines _____.
3. The people in this department can't be trusted, _____.
4. There are many things to consider about the car, _____.
5. The sisters both had the strange disease, _____.
6. James thought he made the right choice, _____.
7. Pam served steak and potatoes to Ben, _____.
8. Alice is a short woman, _____.
9. I thought it would take weeks for them to grow, _____.
10. Daniel loves sports and parties, _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. but the flowers multiplied fast | b. but the majority wanted hamburgers |
| c. so dad thought it was genetic | d. but she didn't know he was a vegetarian |
| e. since the news isn't accurate | f. but the most important factor is its price |
| g. but her offspring are very tall | h. but his brother is more of an intellectual |
| i. but it caused a lot of controversy | j. so we must regulate their actions |

How the Dinosaurs Really Died

Many scientists and **intellectuals** think that dinosaurs died when an **asteroid** smashed into the Earth millions of years ago. However, recently, there has been some **controversy** over this theory. Some scientists think that it isn't **accurate**. They think that a tiny insect may have been the biggest **factor** in the death of these huge creatures. That insect was the mosquito.



These scientists do think that an asteroid hit the Earth in the time of the dinosaurs. But that wasn't what killed all of them. At that time, insects, including the mosquito, were beginning to **evolve**. Today, we can **regulate** the number of mosquitoes with **pesticides**. But that was impossible millions of years ago. The mosquitoes **multiplied** quickly. And they were certainly not idle. Since there were so many mosquitoes, it was easy for them to bite many of the dinosaurs. When they bit another living thing, the mosquitoes passed along a deadly disease. So the dinosaurs were **stricken** with the disease. A **vast majority** of them, from the **vegetarians** to the meat eaters, died.

To **reinforce** this idea, scientists stress how gradually the dinosaurs died. If an asteroid killed them, they would have died very quickly. But the number of dinosaurs decreased slowly. In addition, scientists have found **genetic** material of mosquitoes in fossils. This material proves that mosquitoes existed back then. Although there may have been other factors, the dinosaurs died mainly because of disease, the scientists say.

No matter how it happened, the dinosaurs' death had a major impact on other living things. Many dinosaurs ate **mammals**. After the dinosaurs died, mammals were able to evolve and produce **offspring**. Birds also evolved. Scientists have **analyzed** the **genomes** of

birds, and they discovered that birds have **identical** genetic material to some dinosaurs. So there may still be dinosaurs among us after all.



دایناسورها واقعا چگونه مردند؟

بسیاری از دانشمندان و متفکران معتقدند که دایناسورها وقتی یک شهاب سنگ میلیون ها سال پیش به زمین برخورد کرد، جان خود را از دست دادند. با این حال، اخیراً بحث هایی بر سر این نظریه وجود داشته است. بعضی از دانشمندان فکر می کنند که این نظریه دقیق نیست. آن ها فکر می کنند که یک حشره کوچک ممکن است بزرگ ترین عامل در مرگ این موجودات عظیم باشد. آن حشره پشه بود.

البته این دانشمندان فکر می کنند که یک شهاب سنگ، در زمان دایناسورها به زمین برخورد کرده است. اما این چیزی نبوده که همه آن ها را بکشد. در آن زمان، حشرات، از جمله پشه، شروع به تکامل کردند. امروزه، ما می توانیم تعداد پشه ها را با آفت کش ها تنظیم کنیم. اما این کار میلیون ها سال پیش غیرممکن بود. پشه ها به سرعت تکثیر یافتند. و آن ها بی شک بی کار نبودند. از آنجا که پشه بسیار زیادی وجود داشت، برای آن ها بسیار آسان بود که بسیاری از دایناسورها را گاز بگیرند. هنگامی که یک چیز زنده دیگر را گاز می گرفتند، پشه ها به همراه نیش یک بیماری کشنده را منتقل می کردند. پس دایناسورها مبتلا به این بیماری شده بودند. اکثریت قریب به اتفاق آن ها، از گیاه خواران گرفته تا گوشت خواران، جان خود را از دست دادند.

برای تقویت این نظریه، دانشمندان بر مرگ تدریجی دایناسورها تاکید بسیار دارند. اگر یک شهاب سنگ آن ها را کشته بود باید بسیار سریع از بین می رفتند. اما تعداد دایناسورها به آرامی کاهش یافت. به علاوه دانشمندان محتوای ژنتیکی پشه را در فسیل ها یافتند. این ماده ثابت می کند که پشه ها در آن زمان وجود دارند. دانشمندان می گویند که اگرچه ممکن است عوامل دیگری نیز وجود داشته باشند، دایناسورها عمدتاً به خاطر بیماری مرده اند.

مهم نیست که چطور این اتفاق افتاد، مرگ دایناسورها تاثیری عمده بر موجودات زنده دیگر داشت. بسیاری از دایناسورها پستانداران را می خوردند. پس از مرگ دایناسورها، پستانداران توانستند تکامل پیدا کنند و زاد و ولد کنند. پرنده ها نیز تکامل یافتند. دانشمندان، ژنوم پرنده ها را بررسی کرده اند و کشف کرده اند که این پرنده ها یک ماده ژنتیکی یکسان با برخی دایناسورها دارند. بنابراین ممکن است در میان برخی از همه ما هنوز دایناسورها وجود داشته باشند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ Some scientists think the asteroid theory isn't accurate.

2. ____ A huge creature may have been the biggest factor in the death of these tiny insects.

3. ____ Today, we can regulate the number of mosquitoes with pesticides.

4. ____ A vast majority of mosquitoes, from the vegetarians to the meat eaters, died.

5. ____ In addition, scientists have found the genetic material of mammals in fossils.

6. ____ Many dinosaurs ate mammals.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What might have been the biggest factor in the dinosaurs' death?
 - a. Their genetic material
 - b. An asteroid
 - c. Other animals
 - d. Mosquitoes
2. What do we do to regulate the number of mosquitoes?
 - a. We use pesticides.
 - b. We feed them to vegetarians.
 - c. We kill their offspring.
 - d. We analyze their genomes.
3. How did the mosquitoes spread the deadly disease?
 - a. They produced offspring.
 - b. They bit many dinosaurs.
 - c. They ate birds.
 - d. They multiplied quickly.
4. What proves that mosquitoes were around at the same time as dinosaurs?
 - a. Genetic material in fossils
 - b. Similar modern insects
 - c. Fossils of dinosaurs
 - d. Other disease-stricken animals

v.

cherish

['tʃerɪʃ]

گرامی داشتن، عزیز شمردن



❖ To cherish something means to hold it as very important.

➤ I cherish this trophy I won.

➤ من جایزه ای که برنده شده ام را عزیز می شمارم.

n.

compassion

[kəm'pæʃ(ə)n]

احساسات، دلسوزی



❖ compassion is a feeling of understanding for someone who is hurt or suffering.

➤ The veterinarian had compassion for the sick little puppy.

➤ دامپزشک برای سگ کوچک بیمار دلسوزی کرد.

n.

consent

[kən'sent]

رضایت، موافقت



❖ consent is permission to do something.

➤ Their mother gave the children consent to go outside and play.

➤ مادر آن ها به آن ها اجازه داد که به بیرون بروند و بازی کنند.

n.

core

[kɔ:]

هسته، مرکز



❖ The core is the center of something.

➤ The rings of a tree start forming at its core.

➤ حلقه های درخت از مرکز آن شروع شده اند.

n.

cunning

['kʌnɪŋ]

حیهه گر، حقه باز، مکار



- ❖ If someone is cunning, they are good at tricking people.
- The cunning child fooled his parents into thinking that he was kind.
- کودک زیرک کاری کرد که پدر و مادرش در مورد مهربانی او فریب بخوردند.

adj.

dizzy

['dɪzi]

گیج، منگ



- ❖ If someone is dizzy, then they feel off balance as if they will fall down.
- The pregnant woman was dizzy after standing up too quickly.
- زن حامله بلافاصله بعد از ایستادن ناگهانی، احساس گیجی کرد.

n.

equilibrium

[iːkwɪ'liːbrɪəm]

تعالل، توازن



- ❖ equilibrium is the balance between different forces.
- The sudden drop in prices upset the equilibrium of the economy.
- کاهش ناگهانی قیمت ها، تعادل اقتصاد را از بین برد.

v.

foster

['fɒstə]

ترویج کردن، پرورش دادن



- ❖ To foster a feeling or a skill means to help it develop.
- She helped foster a sense of calm in the little boy.
- او در پرورش حس آرامش به پسر کوچک کمک کرد.

v.

grind

[graɪnd]

آسیاب کردن، ساییدن، خرد کردن



- ❖ To grind something means to break it into very small pieces or powder.
- She wanted to grind the beans, so she could brew some coffee.
- او خواست چند تکه قهوه را آسیاب کند تا بتواند مقداری قهوه دم کند.

v.

growl

[graʊl]

خرخر کردن (سگ)، غریدن



- ❖ To growl means to make a deep, angry sound.
- The dog started to growl at the man walking by.
- زمانی که مرد از کنار او عبور کرد، سگ شروع به خرخر کرد.

n.

moderation

[ˌmɒd(ə)'reɪʃ(ə)n]

اعتدال، میانه‌روی



- ❖ moderation is a state of being just enough but not too much.
- It is important to eat in moderation so that you can have a healthy body.
- برای داشتن بدن سالم مهم است که به میزان تعادل بخورید.

n.

predator

['predətə]

درنده، حیوان شکارچی



- ❖ A predator is an animal that kills and eats other animals.
- The peregrine falcon is a predator that eats fish.
- شاهین شکارچی یک حیوان وحشی است که ماهی می خورد.



adj.

sane

[seɪn]

عادل، معقول



- ❖ If someone is sane, they can think in a normal way.
- Oliver does not act like a sane person when he is angry.
- زمانی که الیور عصبانی می شود، مانند یک انسان عاقل رفتار نمی کند.

n.

saucer

['sɔːsə]

نعلبکی، بشقاب



- ❖ A saucer is a small round dish that you set a cup on.
- He placed the spoon on the saucer.
- او قاشقش را در نعلبکی گذاشت.

v.

snatch

[snætʃ]

قاییدن، ربودن



- ❖ To snatch something means to take it away with a quick motion.
- He was so hungry that he snatched an apple from a tree.
- او به حدی گرسنه بود که یک سیب را از درخت قاپید.

v.

stagger

['stæɡə]

تلوتلو خوردن



- ❖ To stagger means to move in an unsteady way and almost fall over.
- He staggered around after having too much to drink.
- به دلیل زیاده روی در خوردن مشروب تلو تلوخورد.

v.

stumble

['stʌmbəl]

لغزیدن



- ❖ To stumble means to put your foot down wrong so that you almost fall.
- He stumbled as he ran through the puddle.

➤ زمانی که از روی گودال پرید، لغزید.

adj.

tense

[ten(t)s]

نگران، مضطرب



- ❖ If someone is tense, they are worried something bad might happen.
- After the phone call, Monica was very tense.

➤ پس از تلفن، مونیکا بسیار مضطرب بود.

v.

tumble

[ˈtʌmbəl]

افتادن، غلت خوردن



- ❖ To tumble means to fall, often in a rolling way.
- He lost his balance while snowboarding and tumbled to the ground.
- او هنگام اسنو بورد تعادل خود را از دست داد و به زمین افتاد.

v.

withhold

[wɪθ'həʊld]

دریغ کردن، مضایقه کردن



- ❖ To withhold something is to not give it to someone.
- They withheld all information until she paid her fine.

➤ آن ها تا زمانی که او جریمه اش را پرداخت نکرده بود، اطلاعاتش را نگه داشتند.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- Which of the following means to make a noise?
 - Grasp
 - Plush
 - Growl
 - Stagger
- Which of the following eats other animals?
 - Core
 - Predator
 - Cunning
 - Saucer
- What is a balance between two things?
 - Equilibrium
 - Foster
 - Compassion
 - Sane
- Which of the following means not too much?
 - Dizzy
 - Withhold
 - Tense
 - Moderation
- What word means the same as agreement?
 - Cherish
 - Stumble
 - Snatch
 - Consent

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- withhold
 - to think normally
 - to be together
 - to not give
 - to express happiness
- snatch
 - to leave
 - to throw
 - to give
 - to take
- cherish
 - to break into pieces
 - to love something important
 - to agree with
 - to give something away
- stagger
 - to turn off
 - to run into someone
 - to take something away
 - to trip and almost fall
- saucer
 - a small dish
 - to stop being angry
 - helping someone
 - to go against

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. cherish / moderation

I _____ going to the movies, but in _____ because it can be expensive.

2. growl / predator

The lion began to _____, and the deer knew there was a _____ to be afraid of.

3. compassion / sane

The man was _____, so he felt _____ for the starving child in need.

4. saucer / snatch

The boy moved to _____ the cup from his sister and knocked over the _____.

5. core / foster

Deep in the _____ of the tree, there are minerals that _____ new growth.

6. cunning / grind

The _____ criminal started to _____ up the gemstone so no one would know it was the same stone.

7. dizzy / tumbled

After he _____ down the hill, he felt _____.

8. consent / withhold

The woman decided to _____ her permission and did not give _____ to her daughter's request.

9. stumble / tense

The man felt _____ after his horse started to _____ because he thought that the horse might fall.

10. equilibrium / stagger

I felt like I had no _____. As a result, I started to _____ as I walked.

The Traveler and the Innkeeper

A traveler stopped at an inn. He sat and watched people closely, like a **predator**. He heard the old innkeeper talking to a young man in the **core** of the inn.

"I just need to borrow some money. I swear that I'll spend it in **moderation**, and my friend will pay you back tomorrow," the man said. The innkeeper gave his **consent** and pulled out some money.

The traveler knew that this was a trick. The man was going to leave with the poor innkeeper's money and never return. He felt **compassion** for the nice innkeeper and did not want him to be tricked. The **cunning** traveler decided to teach the innkeeper a lesson.

The traveler walked over to the innkeeper and sat down. The innkeeper had started to **grind** coffee beans to make coffee. He made the coffee and handed the traveler a **saucer** and a cup. The two started talking. After a while the traveler yawned and then **growled** like a wolf.

"Are you not **sane**? I thought I just heard you growl," said the innkeeper.

"I did. I am cursed. Every time I yawn three times in a row, I turn into a wolf and attack people."

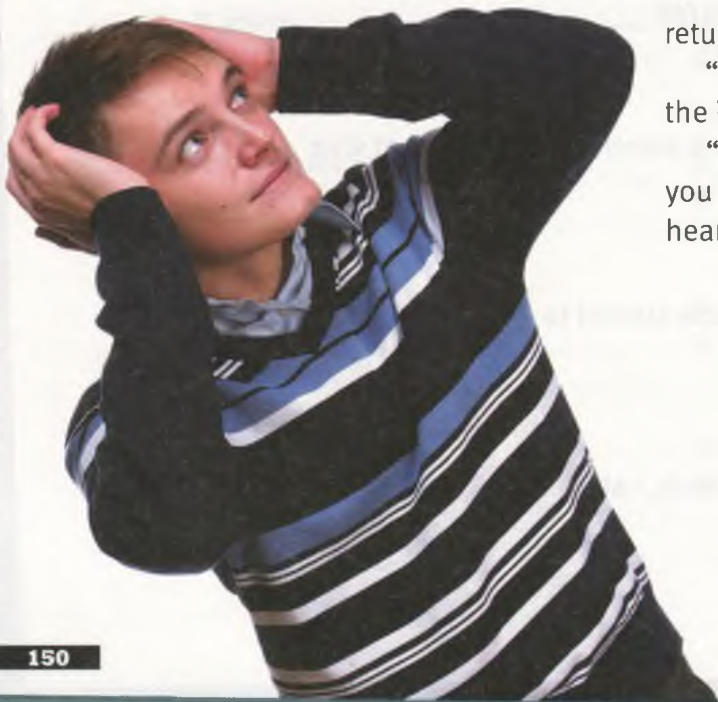
The innkeeper became **tense**. Then the traveler yawned again. As the traveler started to yawn a third time, the innkeeper turned to run outside. As he ran, the traveler **snatched** his coat. The scared innkeeper **staggered** outside and **tumbled** into the street.

The traveler followed him out because he did not want to **withhold** the truth any longer. He just wanted to **foster** happiness and restore the innkeeper's emotional **equilibrium**. The innkeeper was **dizzy**, and he **stumbled**. The traveler helped him stand up.

"That was a trick," the traveler said as he returned the coat.

"Oh, good. I **cherish** this coat," responded the innkeeper.

"Well, hopefully this will teach you that you shouldn't believe every story that you hear."



مسافر و صاحب مسافرخانه

مسافری در یک مسافرخانه توقف کرد. او نشسته بود و مردم را از نزدیک تماشا می‌کرد، مثل یک شکارچی. صدای صاحب مسافرخانه را شنید که با مرد جوانی در وسط مسافرخانه صحبت می‌کرد.

مرد گفت: "من فقط باید مقداری پول قرض کنم. قسم می‌خورم که آن را به حد اعتدال خرج خواهم کرد و دوستم فردا به شما پول را پس خواهد داد." صاحب مسافرخانه موافقت خود را اعلام کرد و مقداری پول بیرون آورد. مسافر می‌دانست که این یک حقه است. این مرد قرار بود با پول میزبان بیچاره خداحافظی کند و دیگر باز نمی‌گشت. او نسبت به صاحب مسافرخانه مهربان احساس دلسوزی می‌کرد و نمی‌خواست او را فریب دهد. مسافر زیرک تصمیم گرفت که به صاحب مسافرخانه درسی بیاموزد.

مسافر به طرف او رفت و نشست. صاحب مسافرخانه شروع به آسیاب کردن دانه قهوه کرد تا قهوه درست کند. او قهوه را درست کرد و یک نعلبکی و یک فنجان به مسافر داد. آن دو شروع به صحبت کردند. بعد از مدتی مسافر خمیازه کشید و بعد مثل یک گرگ غرید.

صاحب مسافرخانه گفت: "مگر عقل و شعور نداری؟ فکر کردم فقط صدای تو را شنیدم " من این کار را کردم. لعنت بر من! هر بار که سه مرتبه پشت سرهم خمیازه می‌کشم، به یک گرگ تبدیل می‌شوم و به مردم حمله می‌کنم." صاحب مسافرخانه عصبی شد. سپس مسافر دوباره خمیازه کشید. وقتی مسافر شروع به خمیازه کشیدن کرد، صاحب مسافرخانه برگشت تا بیرون بدود. همچنان که می‌دوید، مسافر کتتش را برداشت. صاحب مسافرخانه که ترسیده بود تلو تلو دخوران بیرون رفت و وارد خیابان شد.

مسافر به دنبال او بیرون رفت، زیرا نمی‌خواست دیگر حقیقت را پنهان کند. او فقط می‌خواست شادی را گسترش دهد و تعادل عاطفی صاحب مسافرخانه را احیا کند. صاحب مسافرخانه گیج می‌رفت و لیز می‌خورد. مسافر به او کمک کرد سرپا بایستد.

مسافر هنگام برگرداندن کت گفت: " این یک حقه بود. " صاحب مسافرخانه جواب داد: " اوه، خوب است. من این کت را گرمی می‌دارم." خوب، امیدوارم این موضوع به شما آموزش دهد که نباید هر داستانی که می‌شنوید را باور کنید."

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ The thief promised to spend money in moderation.

2. ____ The traveler staggered outside.

3. ____ The innkeeper became tense after the traveler told him why he growled.

4. ____ The traveler felt compassion for the innkeeper.

5. ____ The traveler wanted to withhold the truth and foster anger.

6. ____ The innkeeper said that he cherished his coat.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What did the traveler want to foster inside the innkeeper?
 - a. health
 - b. strength
 - c. despair
 - d. happiness
2. The traveler snatched the coat _____.
 - a. to make the innkeeper sane
 - b. to teach the innkeeper a lesson
 - c. to be a predator
 - d. to sell it and make money
3. Why did the innkeeper consent to give the young man money?
 - a. The young man was scary.
 - b. The young man was cunning.
 - c. The young man was dizzy.
 - d. The young man's friend would repay him.
4. Why did the innkeeper hand the traveler a saucer and a cup?
 - a. So he could drink coffee
 - b. So he could restore equilibrium
 - c. So he could grind coffee beans
 - d. So he could steal his coat



n.

aircraft

['eəkrɑ:ft]

هواپیما



- ❖ An aircraft is a vehicle that flies in the sky, such as an airplane or helicopter.
- At the museum in the airport, you can see a lot of old aircraft.
- در تمام موزه های فرودگاه ها، می توانید تعداد بسیاری هواپیمای قدیمی ببینید.

n.

celebrity

[sə'lebrəti]

شخص مشهور، سلبریتی



- ❖ A celebrity is someone who is famous.
- It was the highlight of the evening when the celebrities arrived.
- مهمترین بخش بعد از ظهر، زمانی بود که افراد مشهور رسیدند.

n.

concrete

['kɒŋkri:t]

بتن، آسفالت



- ❖ concrete is a substance made from stones.
- The man covered the ground with concrete.
- آن مرد زمین را با آسفالت پوشاند.

adj.

decisive

[di'saɪsɪv]

قطعی، قاطع، مصمم



- ❖ If someone is decisive, they make decisions quickly.
- Our boss is very decisive, so it did not take long to organize the project.
- رئیس ما بسیار جدی است، پس ساماندهی پروژه خیلی طول نمی کشد.



adj.

esteemed

[is'ti:md]

محترم، گرامی



- ❖ If someone is esteemed, many people like or respect them.
- An esteemed scientist is coming to the university to talk about her discoveries.
- یک دانشمند محترم برای صحبت در مورد یافته های خود به دانشگاه می آید.

adj.

ethical

['eθik(ə)]

اخلاقی



- ❖ If something is ethical, it is the right thing to do.
- Many people believe that it is ethical to help others in need.
- بسیاری از مردم فکر می کنند که کمک به افراد نیازمند اخلاقی است.

adj.

extinct

[ik'stɪŋkt]

از بین رفته، منقرض



- ❖ If plants or animals are extinct, there are none left.
- There used to be dinosaurs all over the world, but now they are extinct.
- قبل ها در سراسر جهان دایناسورها زندگی می کردند، اما اکنون منقرض شده اند.

adj.

hardy

['hɑ:di]

سر سخت، مقاوم



- ❖ If a person or plant is hardy, it is strong and can live though difficult conditions.
- The farmer is a hardy man and doesn't mind working outside.
- آن مرد کشاورز بسیار سرسخت است و کار کردن در بیرون برای او سخت نیست.

n.

institute

['ɪn(t)stɪtju:t]

موسسه



- ❖ An institute is an organization that is interested in research or teaching.
- I am going to a lecture about ancient Rome at the Historical institute.
- قرار است که یک سخنرانی در مورد روم باستان در موسسه ی تاریخی داشته باشم.

n.

jealousy

['dʒeləsi]

حسادت



- ❖ jealousy is a feeling of wanting something that somebody else has.
- She felt a lot of jealousy when she saw Luke with two girls.
- زمانی که او لوک را با دو دختر دید، حسادت کرد.

v.

migrate

[maɪ'greɪt]

مهاجرت کردن



- ❖ To migrate means to move from one place to another.
- Many birds migrate to warmer countries in the winter.
- بسیاری از پرندگان در زمستان به کشورهای گرم مهاجرت می کنند.

v.

nurture

['nɜ:tʃə]

پرورش دادن، مراقبت کردن



- ❖ To nurture something means to care for it as it grows or develops.
- Robert nurtured his plants, and that is why they grow so well.
- رابرت گیاهانش را پرورش داد، و به همین دلیل آن ها به خوبی رشد کرده اند.



adj.

overhead

['əʊvəhed]

در بالای سر، بالا

- ❖ If something is overhead, it is located above you.
- As we sat on top of the hill, a plane flew overhead.

➤ همانطور که در بالای تپه نشسته بودیم، یک هواپیما از بالای سر ما پرواز کرد.



n.

principle

['prin(t)səpl]

اصل، مبنا، قاعده

- ❖ A principle is a belief about the correct way to behave.
- To maintain principles, it's vital to watch, listen, and speak carefully.

➤ برای حفظ اصول، باید به دقت ببینیم، گوش کنیم و صحبت کنیم.



adj.

rural

['ruər(ə)]

روستایی

- ❖ If a place is rural, it is in the countryside instead of the city.
- I want to live in a small house in a rural area.

➤ من می خواهم در خانه ای کوچک در روستا زندگی کنم.



adj.

secluded

[si'klu:did]

دنج، خلوت

- ❖ If a place is secluded, it is far away from any other place.
- There was a secluded bench in the park.

➤ در پارک یک نیمکت دنج وجود داشت.

n.

species

['spi:ʃi:z]

گونه

- ❖ A species is a type of plant or animal.
- There are 21 different species of butterfly in this forest.
- در این جنگل 21 گونه از پروانگان وجود دارد.

n.

swamp

[swɒmp]

مرداب، باتلاق

- ❖ A swamp is a very wet area of land.
- There are lots of wild animals living in the swamp.
- در این باتلاق حیوانات وحشی زیادی زندگی می کنند.

v.

traverse

[trə'vɜ:s]

عبور کردن، گذشتن، پیمودن

- ❖ To traverse means to move or travel through an area.
- The explorer traversed the desert alone on a camel.
- مکتشف بیابان را به تنهایی با یک شتر پیمود.

n.

zoology

[zu'ɒlədʒi]

جانور شناسی

- ❖ zoology is a subject in which people study animals.
- Helen wants to study zoology because she has always liked animals.
- هلن علاقه به تحصیل در رشته ی جانور شناسی دارد، چرا که او همیشه به حیوانات علاقه داشت.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- being the right thing to do
a. jealousy b. migrate c. ethical d. secluded
- a wet area of land
a. swamp b. institute c. celebrity d. species
- able to make decisions quickly
a. hardy b. rural c. extinct d. decisive
- respected by many people
a. nurture b. traverse c. esteemed d. overhead
- a rule of behavior
a. zoology b. aircraft c. concrete d. principle

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- nurture
a. to travel b. respected c. to care for d. to die
- secluded
a. respected b. correct c. alone d. to make decisions
- species
a. stones b. an animal c. wet land d. a place to study
- jealousy
a. knowing right and wrong b. the act of wanting another person's things
c. famous d. studying animals
- overhead
a. moving b. above c. able to fly d. able to cope

Exercise 2

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- How come we cannot see dinosaurs today?
a. They are celebrities. b. They are extinct.
c. It isn't ethical. d. They have all traversed the desert.
- What should I do if I want to learn about animals?
a. Go to a swamp b. Study zoology c. Nurture babies d. Be decisive
- Which of these does NOT describe the countryside?
a. It is very rural. b. There are not a lot of buildings.
c. Birds often fly overhead. d. There is a lot of concrete.
- If you want to camp in the mountains, you need to _____.
a. have principles b. be hardy c. feel jealousy d. travel in an aircraft
- Birds _____ to warmer parts of the country during the winter.
a. esteem b. insitute c. species d. migrate

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. hardy / traverse

You need to be _____ if you want to _____ the mountains.

2. institute / celebrity

A(n) _____ is going to give a talk at the _____ of Drama.

3. aircraft / migrate

Many people _____ by ship or _____.

4. esteemed / jealousy

She felt a lot of _____ because her sister was highly _____.

5. swamp / extinct

They found the remains of _____ animals in the _____.

6. secluded / species

You can see many different bird _____ in this _____ location.

7. ethical / decisive

He made a quick, _____ choice, but he was worried if it was the _____ thing to fire him over the holidays.

8. zoology / nurture

He chose to study _____ because he has always liked to _____ animals.

9. overhead / rural

I like to be in _____ areas where there are no planes flying _____.

10. concrete / principle

I don't like the _____ of covering the garden in _____.

Gilbert and the Lizard

Eliza disliked Australia. Firstly, she'd had to spend twenty uncomfortable hours on an **aircraft** getting here. She wanted to go to the beach, but her husband was a **zoology** professor and wanted to look for some interesting animals. So now she was **traversing** a **swamp** in the midday heat.

"Let me sit down, Gilbert. I'm not **hardy** like you," she said, eventually.

They sat under a tree. There were lots of birds in that **secluded, rural** place, and they watched them flying **overhead**.

Then suddenly Gilbert saw something on a rock. "That's strange," said Gilbert. "That looks like a Red Swamp Lizard, but I thought that **species** was **extinct**." He carefully picked it up. "Yes, it is! I'm going to take it back to the Zoology **Institute**. They will be filled with so much **jealousy** when they see what I have found!"

"Are you sure we should take it from its home?" asked Eliza.

"Nonsense, many animals **migrate**. They're used to changes," said Gilbert.

"Hmm, I don't agree with the **principle** of it," said Eliza. "It isn't **ethical**." But Gilbert was **decisive** and took the lizard back to the hotel in the city. He thought that this find would make him a highly **esteemed celebrity** at the Zoology Institute.

For the next few days, Gilbert fed and **nurtured** the lizard. But the lizard wasn't happy. It lost its beautiful red color and began to look ordinary. In fact, Gilbert started to wonder whether it was special at all. He went outside and found a common lizard on a piece of **concrete**. When he compared them, they looked exactly alike. The lizard was only red in the swamp!

Gilbert said to Eliza, "I'm going to return this lizard to the swamp. I've learned an important lesson. Home is where we are happiest. At home, we are special like the red lizard. We can never be so happy when we are away."

"Good," said Eliza. "So, can we go home now?"



گیلبرت و مارمولک

الیزا از استرالیا خوشش نمی‌آمد. اول از همه، او مجبور بود بیست ساعت را در یک هواپیما که به اینجا می‌رسید بگذراند. او می‌خواست به ساحل برود، اما شوهرش استاد جانورشناسی بود و می‌خواست به دنبال برخی حیوانات جالب بگردد. بدین ترتیب اکنون در گرمای نیمروز از یک مرداب عبور می‌کرد.

او در نهایت گفت: " بگذار بنشینم، گیلبرت. من مثل تو سرسخت نیستم. "

زیر درختی نشستند. تعداد زیادی پرنده در آن مکان دورافتاده و حاشیه‌ای وجود داشت و آن‌ها را تماشا می‌کردند که بالای سرشان پرواز می‌کردند. سپس گیلبرت چیزی را روی سنگ دید و گفت: " عجیب است، اما من فکر کردم که این گونه از بین رفته‌است. می‌خواهم آن را به موسسه جانورشناسی ببرم. وقتی ببیند من چه چیزی پیدا کرده‌ام، از شدت حسادت شعله ور خواهند شد! الیزا پرسید: " مطمئنی که ما باید آن را از خانه‌اش بیرون ببریم؟ "

گیلبرت گفت: " بسیاری از حیوانات مهاجرت می‌کنند. آن‌ها عادت دارند تغییر کنند. "

الیزا گفت: " هم، من با اصل آن موافق نیستم. " اما گیلبرت مصمم بود و مارمولک را به هتل داخل شهر برد. وی می‌پنداشت که این یافته او را در موسسه جانورشناسی تبدیل به یک دانشمند مشهور و محترم خواهد کرد.

تا چند روز بعد، گیلبرت مارمولک را تغذیه کرد و پرورش داد. اما مارمولک خوشحال نبود. رنگ قرمز زیبایش از بین رفت و به نظر عادی رسید. در واقع گیلبرت شروع به تعجب کرد که آیا اصلاً آن مارمولک خاص است یا نه. او بیرون رفت و یک مارمولک معمولی را زیر یک تکه سنگ پیدا کرد. وقتی آن‌ها را مقایسه کرد، دقیقاً شبیه هم بودند. مارمولک فقط در آن باتلاق سرخ بود!

گیلبرت به الیزا گفت: " من می‌خواهم این مارمولک را به باتلاق برگردانم. من درس مهمی را یاد گرفته‌ام. خانه جایی است که ما در شادترین حالت خود هستیم. در خانه، ما شبیه به مارمولک قرمز هستیم. الیزا گفت: " خوب، حالا می‌توانیم به خانه برگردیم؟ "

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ The journey on the aircraft to Australia took thirty hours.

2. ____ Eliza was a professor of zoology.

3. ____ Eliza was hardier than Gilbert.

4. ____ The swamp was in a rural, secluded area.

5. ____ Gilbert thought that the red lizard was an extinct species.

6. ____ Gilbert nurtured the red lizard at the hotel.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What did Gilbert and Eliza see flying overhead?

- a. An aircraft
- b. Birds
- c. An extinct species
- d. Butterflies

2. How was Gilbert described after he found the lizard?

- a. Full of jealousy
- b. Highly esteemed
- c. Decisive
- d. Full of principles

3. What did Gilbert think that the find would make him feel like?

- a. A celebrity
- b. Decisive
- c. Ethical
- d. Hardy

4. Where did Gilbert want to take the red lizard?

- a. To the Zoology Institute
- b. To the university
- c. To a different swamp
- d. To his home



n.

assumption [ə'sʌmpʃ(ə)n]

فرض، گمان



- ❖ An assumption is something that you believe is true but cannot prove.
- I went to the cafeteria on the assumption that everyone would be there.
- با فرض اینکه همه در کافه تریا هستند، به آن جا رفتم.

n.

barley ['bɑ:lɪ]

جو



- ❖ barley is a grain that is used for animal feed, health food and beer.
- The farmer grew barley to feed his cows in the winter.
- کشاورز برای غذا دادن به گاو هایش در زمستان، جو کاشت.

n.

beast [bi:st]

حیوان، جانور



- ❖ A beast is a large, dangerous animal.
- A lion is one of the fiercest beasts on Earth.
- شیر یکی از وحشی ترین حیوانات روی زمین است.

n.

colonel ['kɜ:n(ə)]

سرهنگ



- ❖ A colonel is a military officer.
- James has been given a promotion in the army. He is now a colonel.
- جیمز در ارتش ترفیع گرفت، اکنون او سرهنگ است.



adj.

contagious

[kən'teɪdʒəs]

مسری، واگیردار

- ❖ If a disease is contagious, it is easily carried from one person to another.
- You must wear protective clothing because the patient's illness is contagious.
- شما باید لباس محافظ بپوشید، چرا که بیماری بیمار مسری است.

n.

corpse

[kɔ:ps]

جسد، جنازه

- ❖ A corpse is a dead body of a human.
- After the accident, the corpse was taken to the hospital.
- پس از تصادف، جنازه به بیمارستان منتقل شد.



n.

crisis

['kraɪsɪs]

بحران

- ❖ A crisis is a situation that is extremely stressful or dangerous.
- The airport workers' strike led to a crisis at the airport.
- اعتصاب کارکنان فرودگاه باعث ایجاد بحران در فرودگاه شد.



v.

cure

[kjʊə]

درمان کردن

- ❖ To cure means to cause an illness or injury to end or disappear.
- My dentist cured me of my toothache.
- دندانپزشکم دندان درد مرا درمان کرد.



adj.

deformed

[di'fɔ:md]

ناقص، معیوب، بد فرم



- ❖ If something is deformed, it is not shaped normally and may appear ugly.
- Even though the carrot was deformed, it was still safe to eat.
- اگرچه هویج تغییر شکل داده بود، اما خوردن آن مشکلی نداشت.

v.

discriminate

[di'skrimineɪt]

فرق گذاشتن، تبعیض قائل شدن



- ❖ To discriminate means to judge people according to their looks.
- They discriminated against her because she was different.
- به دلیل اینکه او متفاوت بود، میان او و دیگران تبعیض قائل می شدند.

n.

embassy

['embəsi]

سفارتخانه



- ❖ An embassy is where government officials work in a foreign country.
- If you lose your passport, you should contact the embassy.
- در صورت گم کردن پاسپورت خود باید با سفارت تماس بگیرید.

v.

extinguish

[ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃ]

خاموش کردن، مهار کردن، فرونشاندن



- ❖ To extinguish a fire means to make it stop.
- Michael extinguished the small fire with the hose.

➤ مایکل آتش را با یک شلنگ خاموش کرد.

n.

flint

[flɪnt]

سنگ چخماخ



- ❖ flint is a hard stone that people used to make weapons for hunting.
- There are a lot of flint tools in the museum.

➤ در موزه ابزار های آتشنزنی بسیار وجود دارد.

v.

harass

['hærəs]

آزار دادن، اذیت کردن



- ❖ To harass someone means to annoy or trouble them.
- The children harassed their mother because they wanted her attention.

➤ بچه ها مادرشان را آزار دادند، چرا که آن ها دنبال توجه او بودند.

v.

integrate

['ɪntɪɡreɪt]

ادغام شدن، ادغام کردن، یکپارچه شدن



- ❖ To integrate means to join, communicate and socialize.
- Governments want immigrants to integrate with the population.

➤ دولت خواهان ادغام مهاجران با مردم عادی می باشد.

adj.

miniature

['mɪniətʃə]

مینیاچوری، سایز کوچک



- ❖ If something is miniature, it is very small.
- The boy enjoys playing with his miniature train set in his bedroom.

➤ پسر بچه از بازی با مجموعه قطارهای کوچک خود در اتاق خوابش لذت می برد.



n.

nutrition

[nju:'triʃ(ə)n]

تغذیه



- ❖ nutrition is the process by which people use food to stay healthy.
- It is important to pay attention to nutrition if you want to be an athlete.
- اگر شما می خواهید یک ورزشکار باشید، باید به تغذیه ی خود توجه داشته باشید.

adv.

promptly

['prɒmptli]

فوراً، سریعاً، بی درنگ



- ❖ If something happens promptly, it happens quickly or on time.
- Arrive promptly, or we won't have time to discuss everything.
- فوراً بیا، در غیر این صورت زمان کافی برای بحث در مورد همه چیز را نخواهیم داشت.

n.

technician

[tek'niʃ(ə)n]

متخصص فنی، تکنیسین



- ❖ A technician is a person who is skilled in electronic or mechanical work.
- I need to call the technician to help me with my computer.
- باید برای حل مشکلم با کامپیوتر، با تکنسین تماس بگیرم.

n.

tropics

['trɒpiks]

مناطق استوایی، مناطق گرمسیری



- ❖ The tropics are the areas of land and sea close to the equator.
- People like to go to the tropics for vacation because it's warm.
- مردم دوست دارند برای تعطیلات به منطقه ی استوا بروند، چرا که آن جا گرم است.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. a dangerous animal
a. barley
b. beast
c. an assumption
d. cure
2. to trouble or annoy someone
a. extinguish
b. harass
c. discriminate
d. integrate
3. a dead body
a. colonel
b. flint
c. corpse
d. embassy
4. very small
a. miniature
b. contagious
c. deformed
d. promptly
5. a bad situation
a. technician
b. crisis
c. nutrition
d. tropics

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. assumption
a. a grain
b. a military officer
c. a belief without proof
d. a bad situation
2. integrate
a. to be on time
b. to become ill
c. to put out a fire
d. to socialize with
3. flint
a. a dead body
b. an unusual shape
c. a hard stone
d. a building in another country
4. nutrition
a. trouble
b. the process of how food is used for health
c. ending an illness
d. a dangerous animal
5. tropics
a. areas close to the Equator
b. small things
c. scientists
d. bad treatment

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. Barley is often _____.
2. The **colonel** won a medal _____.
3. Our new neighbors have **integrated** well _____.
4. The **corpse** was examined _____.
5. An employer should not **discriminate** _____.
6. The **embassy** will tell you _____.
7. The financial **crisis** _____.
8. I was able to **extinguish** the _____.
9. Flint weapons were used _____.
10. A lot of **miniature** electronic machines _____.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| a. to determine the cause of death | b. are manufactured in Japan |
| c. how you can get a visa | d. by people living ten thousand years ago |
| e. fed to animals | f. was caused by poor bank management |
| g. entire fire by myself | h. for his work in the war |
| i. with the people in the village | j. among people at work |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. Tom left the house early _____.
2. The children wanted some chocolate, _____.
3. The book was very fun to read _____.
4. I phoned the police, _____.
5. Pam isn't at work today _____.
6. I want to cut down the tree in the garden _____.
7. James studied chemistry at university, _____.
8. Mike was released from the hospital _____.
9. If you want to be healthy, _____.
10. You may need to have some vaccinations _____.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a. if you go on vacation in the tropics | b. because the doctors cured his illness |
| c. because the illness is contagious | d. because all the beasts could talk |
| e. and they arrived very promptly | f. because it is deformed and looks ugly |
| g. so they harassed their father until he bought some | |
| h. on the assumption that the traffic would be bad | |
| i. and now he works as a technician in a laboratory | |
| j. you need to pay attention to your nutrition | |

The Forest People

Colonel Wilbur and his wife Mary were flying over the **tropics** in their private plane. But suddenly the engine caught fire. It was impossible to **extinguish** the fire, so they were forced to land in the forest.

“What are we going to do?” said Mary. “Can you fix the plane?”

Wilbur said, “That’s impossible. I am not a **technician**, and the plane is out of gasoline. We’ll have to find help.”

Wilbur and Mary walked through the forest. It was difficult to find a path through the trees. Mary even tore her dress on sharp thorns. Suddenly, they saw some huts and lots of **miniature** people, cooking and making weapons with **flint**.

“I’ll ask them for help,” said Wilbur.

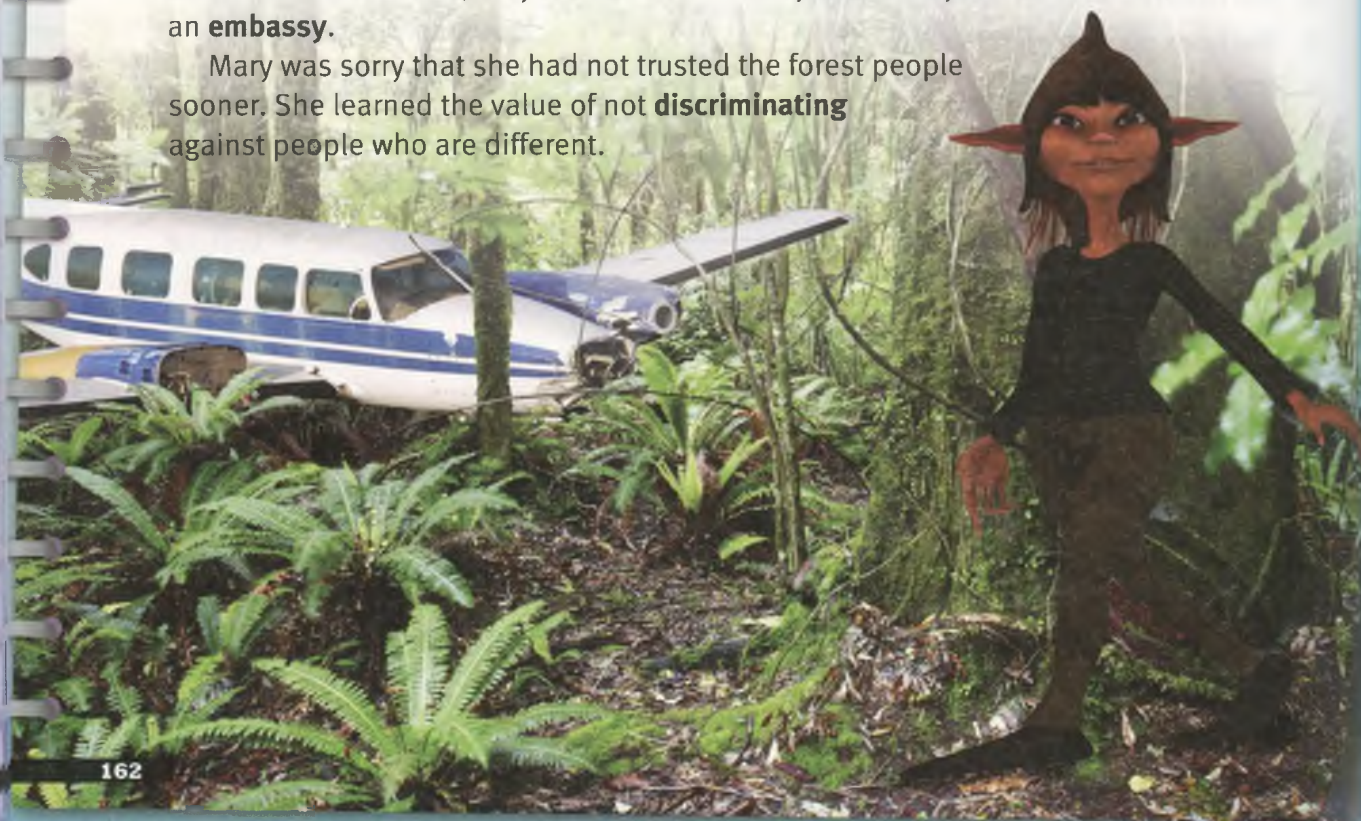
“No! Don’t go! They are **deformed!**” said Mary. “They’ll **harass** us! They may have a **contagious** virus that will make us sick! We won’t know how to **cure** it. We’ll surely end up as **corpses!**”

Wilbur tried to persuade Mary to go to the forest people, but she refused to **integrate** with them. She had the **assumption** that the small people were dangerous. “Let’s keep walking. We’re sure to find someone sooner or later.”

For three days, the couple searched, but they found no one who could help them in their **crisis**. It was uncomfortable, and they were hungry without any source of **nutrition**. Plus, the forest was filled with dangerous **beasts**. Finally, Mary agreed to return to the forest people.

When Wilbur and Mary arrived at the village, the forest people immediately welcomed them. They gave them bread made from **barely** to eat and a place to sleep. The next day, the forest people led Wilbur and Mary through the trees, and they **promptly** arrived at a small town. From there, they took a bus to the city where they found an **embassy**.

Mary was sorry that she had not trusted the forest people sooner. She learned the value of not **discriminating** against people who are different.



جنگلی‌ها

سرهنگ ویلبر و همسرش مری در حال پرواز با هواپیمای خصوصی خود بر فراز جنگل‌های استوایی بودند. اما ناگهان موتور آتش گرفت. خاموش کردن آتش غیر ممکن بود، بنابراین مجبور شدند در جنگل فرود بیایند.

مری گفت: "چه کار باید بکنیم؟ می‌توانی هواپیما را تعمیر کنی؟" ویلبر گفت: "این غیر ممکن است. من تکنسین نیستم و هواپیما بنزین ندارد. ما باید کمک پیدا کنیم."

ویلبر و مری از جنگل رد شدند. پیدا کردن راهی از میان درختان مشکل بود. مری حتی لباسش را پاره کرد. ناگهان، آن‌ها چند کلبه و بسیاری مردم کوچک اندام را دیدند که مشغول پخت‌وپز و ساخت سلاح با سنگ چخماق بودند.

ویلبرگفت: "من از آن‌ها درخواست کمک می‌کنم." مری گفت: "نه! نرو! آن‌ها تغییر شکل داده‌اند! آن‌ها ما را آزار خواهند داد! آن‌ها ممکن است یک ویروس مسری داشته باشند که ما را بیمار کند! ما نمی‌دانیم چطور آن را درمان کنیم. آنوقت حتما جسدمان از اینجا بیرون خواهد رفت!"

ویلبر سعی کرد مری را متقاعد کند که به جنگل برود، اما او از قاطی شدن با آن‌ها (جنگلی‌ها) امتناع کرد. او این فرض را داشت که مردم کوچک خطرناک هستند. "بیا به راه رفتنمان ادامه بدهیم، ما مطمئن هستیم که دیر یا زود یک نفر را پیدا خواهیم کرد."

این زوج به مدت سه روز جستجو کردند اما کسی را پیدا نکردند که بتواند در بحران به آن‌ها کمک کند. ناراحت‌کننده بود، و آن‌ها بدون هیچ منبع تغذیه‌ای گرسنه بودند. به علاوه جنگل پر از جانوران خطرناک بود. سرانجام مری موافقت کرد که به جنگل برگردد.

هنگامی که ویلبر و مری به دهکده رسیدند، مردم جنگل بلافاصله از آن‌ها استقبال کردند. آن‌ها به آن دو نان جو دادند که بخورند و جایی برای خوابیدن داشته باشند. روز بعد، مردم جنگل ویلبر و مری را در میان درختان هدایت کردند و آن‌ها فوراً به یک شهر کوچک رسیدند. از آنجا، یک اتوبوس آن‌ها را به شهری برد که در آنجا سفارت پیدا کردند.

مری متأسف بود که زودتر به مردم جنگل اعتماد نکرده است. او ارزش عدم تبعیض علیه افرادی که متفاوت هستند را یاد گرفت.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ Wilbur and Mary had to land in the forest because the engine caught fire.

2. ____ It was possible for the colonel to extinguish the fire on the plane.

3. ____ Even though the plane crashed, it still had plenty of gasoline.

4. ____ Mary refused to go to the people on the assumption they had a contagious virus.

5. ____ The couple searched for help in the forest for five days.

6. ____ The forest people led Wilbur and Mary through the trees, and they promptly arrived at a city.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. What was the bread that the forest people gave Wilbur and Mary made of?
a. Barley b. Flint
c. Corpses d. Beasts
2. After the crisis in the forest, Mary learned not to _____.
a. discriminate against people b. harass forest people
c. fly a plane in the tropics d. wear dresses in the forest
3. Where was the embassy located?
a. In the village b. On the coast
c. In the city d. In the town
4. Why didn't Mary want to integrate with the forest people?
a. They had poor nutrition. b. They looked deformed.
c. They were very tall. d. They were from the embassy.



adj.

beneficial

[ˌbenɪˈfɪ(ə)]

سودمند، مفید

- ❖ If something is beneficial, it is good for you.
- Drinking milk everyday is beneficial to your bones.
- نوشیدن هر روزه ی شیر برای استخوان هایتان مفید است.



n.

birthplace

['bɜːθpleɪs]

محل تولد، زادگاه

- ❖ A birthplace is a place where a person is born or where something started.
- China is the birthplace of chopsticks.
- چین خواستگاه چاپ استیک می باشد.



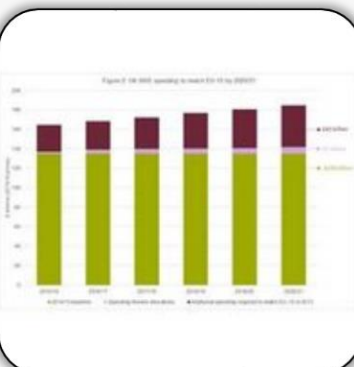
n.

capacity

[kə'pæsəti]

گنجایش، ظرفیت

- ❖ The capacity of something is the amount of things that can be put in it.
- The parking lot has reached its full capacity.
- ظرفیت پارکینگ تکمیل شده است.



adj.

comparative

[kəm'pærətɪv]

قابل مقایسه، تطبیقی

- ❖ If something is comparative, it is being judged based on something else.
- The money that John has is comparative to most other adults.
- پولی که جان داشت با پول اکثر بزرگسالان در قیاس بود.

adj.

comprehensive [kəm'pri'hens(ɪ)sv]

جامع، کامل



- ❖ If something is comprehensive, it has all the details about something else.
- The teacher gave us a comprehensive review for the exam.
- معلم یک تحلیل کامل از امتحان به ما ارائه داد.

v.

conserve [kən'sɜ:v]

نگهداری کردن، حفظ کردن



- ❖ To conserve something is to protect it from being ruined or used completely.
- The group worked to conserve the beauty of Europe's national parks.
- گروه برای حفظ زیبایی پارک ملی کار کرد.

adj.

crucial ['kru:ʃ(ə)l]

مهم، حیاتی



- ❖ If something is crucial, it is extremely important to another thing.
- Clean air is crucial to the survival of humans, plants, and animals.
- هوای پاک برای بقای انسان ها، گیاهان و حیوانات حیاتی است.

n.

cumulative ['kju:mjələtɪv]

انباشت (برف)



- ❖ cumulative describes an increase by adding one after another.
- The cumulative snowfall in the area is 50 centimeters per year.
- در این محل، سالانه 50 سانتی متر برف می بارد.



v.

deposit

[dɪ'pɒzɪt]

واریز کردن (پول)



❖ To deposit something is to put it into a place or another thing.

➤ I deposited the money into my bank account.

➤ پول را به حساب بانکی ام واریز کردم.

v.

distribute

[dɪ'strɪbjʊ:t]

توزیع کردن، پخش کردن



❖ To distribute something is to give it to a number of people.

➤ The teacher distributed crayons and markers to his students.

➤ معلم مداد شمعی و ماژیک ها را میان دانش آموزان پخش کرد.

n.

equator

[i'kwetə]

خط استوا



❖ The equator is an imaginary line that splits the Earth into north and south.

➤ The equator crosses the northern part of South America.

➤ خط استوا از شمالی ترین بخش آمریکای جنوبی عبور می کند.

adj.

exotic

[ɪg'zɒtɪk]

عجیب و غریب، خاص



❖ exotic describes something unusual because it is from far away.

➤ Rebecca tried many exotic foods on her trip to Africa.

➤ ربکا در سفرش به آفریقا، غذاهای عجیب و غریب زیادی را امتحان کرد.

adj.

federal

['fed(ə)r(ə)l]

فدرال، دولتی



- ❖ If something is federal, it comes from the government of a country.
- Sometimes federal laws are different from state laws.
- گاهی اوقات قوانین فدرال با قوانین دولت متفاوت است.

n.

formation

[fɔ:'meɪj(ə)n]

تشکیل، تاسیس، شکل‌گیری



- ❖ A formation is the way that something is made.
- The formation of ice happens when water freezes.
- زمانی که آب منجمد می‌شود، یخ تشکیل می‌شود.

n.

frequency

['fri:kwən(t)sɪ]

تناوب، فراوانی، تکرار



- ❖ The frequency of something is the number of times that it happens.
- The frequency of rainstorms is very high, especially during the spring.
- تناوب باران‌های توفانی به خصوص در فصل بهار بسیار زیاد است.

n.

objective

[əb'dʒektɪv]

هدف، مقصود



- ❖ An objective is a goal or plan that someone has.
- My objective this week is to finish my homework by 7:30 every night.
- هدف من در این هفته این است که تکالیفم را هر شب راس ساعت 7 و نیم به پایان برسانم.

n.

oxygen

['ɒksɪdʒən]

اکسیژن



- ❖ oxygen is a gas that all living things need to breathe.
- My aunt believes that the oxygen in the country is cleaner than in the city.
- عمه ی من بر این باور است که اکسیژن کشور پاک تر از شهر است.

n.

rainforest

['reɪn, fɔːrɪst]

جنگل بارانی



- ❖ A rainforest is a forest that is in a place where it rains very often.
- The rainforest is home to many animals.
- جنگل بارانی محل زندگی بسیاری از حیوانات است.

n.

strategy

['strætədʒi]

راهبرد، استراتژی، برنامه ریزی



- ❖ A strategy is a plan for how to do something.
- The team came up with a strategy to win the game.
- تیم برای برد بازی یک استراتژی به ذهنش رسید.

adj.

wooded

['wʊdɪd]

جنگلی، پوشیده از درخت



- ❖ If an area is wooded, it is covered with trees.
- Jim and Ben decided to go hiking in the wooded area by the river.
- جیم و بن تصمیم گرفتند که در منطقه ی جنگلی کنار رودخانه پیاده روی کنند.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to give something away
 - deposit
 - distribute
 - comprehensive
 - conserve
- extremely important
 - cumulative
 - federal
 - crucial
 - wooded
- where something begins
 - birthplace
 - formation
 - rainforest
 - equator
- a person's goal
 - strategy
 - capacity
 - objective
 - frequency
- unusual and unfamiliar
 - oxygen
 - exotic
 - comparative
 - beneficial

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- strategy
 - a plan
 - a goal
 - a line
 - a forest
- beneficial
 - filled with trees
 - good for you
 - unusual or exciting
 - containing many details
- formation
 - how something is made
 - the number of things inside something
 - where someone is born
 - how often something happens
- federal
 - made from added parts
 - coming from the government
 - very important
 - based on something else
- conserve
 - to protect
 - to give
 - to put into
 - to breathe

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I like going to the park because it's covered with trees, and I feel like I'm in the mountains.

2. Sam gave away party invitations to his friends.

3. The letter came from a national government office.

4. The business's goal is to earn more money this year than it did last year.

5. My mother grows unusual and unfamiliar flowers in her garden.

6. He needed gas required for breathing to help him survive.

7. This book about the history of India is full of details.

8. I'm going to visit a small town in Ecuador that is near the imaginary line.

9. The number of shoes that Jane and Beth have is judged based on something else.

10. Eddie didn't want to eat it, but he knew the broccoli would be good for his health.

Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which word has about the same meaning as capacity?
a. open b. expand c. reduce d. maximum amount
2. Which of these can be cumulative?
a. Snow b. A plate c. A radio d. Air
3. What is something you would deposit into a closet?
a. A television b. Jackets c. Money d. Water
4. What is something you probably wouldn't encounter in a rainforest?
a. Many trees b. Monkeys c. Humid weather d. Kangaroos
5. In which place is there a high frequency of snowfall?
a. Antarctica b. Spain c. England d. Australia

A Dying Forest

Rainforests provide much of the world's **oxygen** supply. But the forests' **exotic** trees and animals are being killed to make room for farmers and roads. People have been trying to **conserve** rainforests for years. But another type of forest—the cloud forest—is just as **beneficial** to humans. Cloud forests are also in danger of disappearing, but little is being done to save them.

These forests are located at the tops of mountains, generally near the **equator**. These humid, **wooded** mountaintops are mainly in African and Central and South American countries. They are called “cloud forests” because their height allows for the **formation** of clouds among the trees.

Rainforests produce large amounts of oxygen. Cloud forests produce **comparative** amounts of water. The trees in these forests pull water out of the clouds. The moisture gathers on the leaves. When it drips, it is **deposited** into streams. The streams flow into towns at the bottom of the mountain. Then, it's **distributed** to people. The yearly **cumulative** rainfall in these areas is 173–198 centimeters. Cloud forests can pull in up to 60 percent of that. This water is **crucial** to the plants and the people in the area. It helps them survive.

Cloud forests are also the **birthplace** of countless species of plants that can't be found anywhere else. One small cloud forest has the **capacity** for as many types of plants as there are in all of Europe. There are so many, in fact, that scientists haven't made a **comprehensive** list of them yet.

These forests are being destroyed with increasing **frequency**. Trees are being cut down, and roads are being built in their place. Some people have an **objective** to get **federal** money to protect the forests. But they have had little success. Another **strategy** is to replace the destroyed plants. That, too, has been difficult because the plants are so unique. There's plenty of work to be done, but saving the cloud forests is still a possibility.



جنگل در حال مرگ

جنگل‌های بارانی مقدار زیادی از اکسیژن جهان را تامین می‌کنند. اما درختان شگفت‌انگیز و حیوانات نادر این جنگل‌ها برای ایجاد فضا جهت کشاورزان و جاده‌ها کشته می‌شوند. مردم سالهاست که تلاش می‌کنند جنگل‌های انبوه را حفظ کنند. اما نوع دیگری از جنگل - جنگل ابر - به همان اندازه برای انسان‌ها مفید است. همچنین جنگل‌های ابری در خطر نابودی قرار دارند، اما برای نجات آن‌ها کار کمی انجام شده است.

این جنگل‌ها در قله‌های کوه‌ها، به طور کلی نزدیک خط استوا و قله پوشیده از درخت، عمدتاً در کشورهای آفریقایی و مرکزی و جنوبی قرار دارند. آن‌ها به نام "جنگل‌های ابر" خوانده می‌شوند زیرا ارتفاع آن‌ها اجازه تشکیل ابرها در میان درختان را می‌دهد.

جنگل‌های بارانی، مقادیر زیادی اکسیژن تولید می‌کنند. جنگل‌های ابری مقادیر نسبی آب را تولید می‌کنند. درختان این جنگل‌ها آب را از ابرها بیرون می‌کشند. رطوبت روی برگ‌ها جمع می‌شود و وقتی که چکه می‌کند، به جویبارها سپرده می‌شود. جریان جویبارها به شهرها در پایین کوه جریان می‌یابد. سپس به مردم توزیع می‌شود. بارش سالانه در این مناطق ۱۷۳ - ۱۹۸ سانتی متر است. جنگل‌های ابری می‌تواند تا ۶۰ درصد از این رطوبت را جذب کند. این آب برای گیاهان و مردم منطقه حیاتی است. این کار به آن‌ها کمک می‌کند تا زنده بمانند.

جنگل‌های ابری محل تولد گونه‌های بیشماری از گیاهان هستند که در هیچ جای دیگر یافت نمی‌شوند. یک جنگل ابر کوچک ظرفیت رشد بسیاری از انواع گیاهانی را دارد که در کل اروپا یافت می‌شوند. در واقع بسیاری از دانشمندان هنوز یک لیست جامع از این گیاهان ایجاد نکرده‌اند.

این جنگل‌ها با افزایش فراوانی جمعیت تخریب می‌شوند. درختان قطع می‌شوند و جاده‌ها در محل آن‌ها ساخته می‌شوند. برخی افراد هدف دریافت بودجه فدرال برای حفاظت از جنگل‌ها را در سر دارند. اما موفقیت چندانی نداشتند. یک استراتژی دیگر جایگزین کردن گیاهان نابود شده است. این هم مشکل است چون گیاهان خیلی منحصر به فرد هستند. کارهای زیادی برای انجام دادن وجود دارد، اما حفظ جنگل‌های انبوه هنوز هم امکان‌پذیر است.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ The equator provides much of the world's oxygen supply.

2. ____ People have been trying to conserve rainforests for years.

3. ____ Another type of forest—the cloud forest—is just as beneficial to humans as a rainforest.

4. ____ These humid, wooded mountaintops are mainly in African and European countries.

5. ____ Cloud forests are being destroyed with increasing frequency.

6. ____ Some people have an objective to get federal money to protect the forests.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Where are cloud forests located?
 - a. Near the equator
 - b. In rainforests
 - c. On farms
 - d. In Europe
2. How do the trees in cloud forests make water?
 - a. They pull it in from clouds.
 - b. They allow the formation of clouds.
 - c. They let it gather in leaves.
 - d. They pull it in from streams.
3. How much water do cloud forests add to the yearly cumulative rainfall?
 - a. About 188 centimeters
 - b. More than 178 centimeters
 - c. Up to 60 percent
 - d. Less than rainforests
4. Why do some people want federal money?
 - a. To plant more trees
 - b. To build more roads
 - c. To make room for farmers
 - d. To protect the forests

n.

avail

[ə'veɪl]

فایده، سود، استفاده



- ❖ avail is help. It is often used in the achievement of a goal.
- His studying was to no avail because he failed the test.
- مطالعه ی او فایده ای نداشت، چرا که او امتحانش را رد شد.

v.

expand

[ɪk'spænd]

منبسط شدن، بزرگ شدن



- ❖ To expand is to become bigger in size.
- A balloon will expand as you blow air into it.
- زمانی که هوا را وارد بالون می کنید، منبسط می شود.

v.

define

[di'faɪn]

شرح دادن، تعریف کردن



- ❖ To define means to clearly state, show, or explain what something is.
- People define success in many different ways.
- مردم موفقیت را به روش های مختلفی بیان می کنند.

v.

dread

[dred]

بیم داشتن، وحشت داشتن



- ❖ To dread is to be afraid of something that could, or is going to, happen.
- I dread the idea that I will not get into college.
- من از اینکه به کالج نروم، بیم داشتم.

adj.

fundamental [ˌfʌndə'ment(ə)l]

بنیادی، اساسی



- ❖ If something is fundamental, it is a basic part of something.
- The fundamental rules of basketball are easy.

➤ قوانین اولیه ی بسکتبال آسان است.

adj.

horrifying ['hɒrɪfaɪɪŋ]

ترسناک، وحشتناک



- ❖ If something is horrifying, it is frightening and very unpleasant.
- There was a horrifying car accident today.

➤ امروز یک تصادف وحشتناک اتفاق افتاد.

adj.

incredulous [ɪn'kredjʊləs]

دیر باور، شکاک



- ❖ If someone is incredulous about something, they do not believe that it is true.
- She was incredulous that monkeys could ever drive a car.

➤ او باور نمی کرد که میمون ها بتوانند رانندگی کنند.

v.

linger ['lɪŋgə]

باقی ماندن



- ❖ To linger is to last for a long time.
- The smell of fresh cookies lingered in the bakery.

➤ بوی بیسکویت ماهی در نانوانی مانده بود.

n.

organism

['ɔ:g(ə)nɪz(ə)m]

جاندار، ارگانیسم



- ❖ An organism is a living thing, especially a very small one.
- We studied the organism on the microscope.

➤ ما ارگانیسم ها را زیر میکروسکوپ مطالعه کردیم.

v.

paraphrase

['pærəfreɪz]

به بیان دیگر گفتن



- ❖ To paraphrase is to make someone else's writing or speech shorter.
- The students were asked to paraphrase the story they just heard.

➤ از دانش آموزان خواسته شد که داستان را به شکل دیگری بیان کنند.

n.

plague

[pleɪg]

طاعون



- ❖ A plague is a serious disease that quickly spreads to many people.
- A plague in Europe killed millions of people.

➤ طاعون در اروپا جان میلیون ها نفر را گرفت.

adv.

presently

['prez(ə)ntli]

در حال حاضر، اکنون



- ❖ If something happens presently, it is happening right now.
- presently, our profits are good, but by next year we can do even better.

➤ در حال حاضر سود ما خوب است، اما برای سال بعد حتی می توانیم بهتر عمل کنیم.

adj.

random

['rændəm]

تصادفی، رندم، اتفاقی



- ❖ If something is random, it happens without any pattern or reason.
- Young children often ask random questions.

➤ بچه های کوچک اکثرا سوال های تصادفی می پرسند.

n.

riot

['raɪət]

آشوب، شورش، اغتشاش



- ❖ A riot is a crowd that reacts to bad news by violently breaking laws.
- A riot broke out after the candidate lost the election.

➤ پس از شکست کاندیدا در انتخابات، آشوب شروع شد.

v.

scribble

['skrɪbl]

با عجله نوشتن



- ❖ To scribble is to write something quickly without caring about how it looks.
- I scribbled a rough diagram of our plan and gave it to him.

➤ به سرعت نموداری از برنامه هایمان برایش کشیدم و به او دادم.

n.

shrine

[ʃraɪn]

مقبره، زیارتگاه



- ❖ A shrine is a religious building built to honor a person, event, or god.
- He prayed at the shrine for an hour.

➤ او یک ساعت در زیارتگاه دعا کرد.

n.

solitude

['sɒlɪt(j)u:d]

تنهایی، خلوت



- ❖ solitude is the state of being totally alone.
- John lives a life of solitude because he doesn't get along well with people.
- جان تنها زندگی می کند، چرا که نمی تواند به راحتی با مردم کنار بیاید.

adj.

stark

[sta:k]

کامل، مطلق



- ❖ If a contrast is stark, then the things being compared are utterly different.
- There is a stark contrast between their test scores.
- تفاوت آشکاری میان نمرات امتحانات آن ها وجود دارد.

v.

summon

['sʌmən]

احضار کردن، فراخواندن



- ❖ To summon a person is to ask them to come to you.
- We summoned the doctor as soon as we noticed she was sick.
- به محض اطلاع از بیماری او، دکتر را احضار کردیم.

v.

worsen

['wɜ:s(ə)n]

بدتر شدن، بدتر کردن



- ❖ To worsen is to get worse.
- The weather suddenly worsened, and we had to stay inside.
- هوا ناگهان بدتر شد، و باید در خانه می ماندیم.

Exercise 1

PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to ask someone to come
a. worsen
b. scribble
c. linger
d. summon
- basic
a. verse
b. riot
c. avail
d. fundamental
- to get bigger
a. expand
b. define
c. stark
d. organism
- to be afraid
a. dread
b. shrine
c. random
d. horrifying
- not believing
a. solitude
b. presently
c. incredulous
d. plague

PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- plague
a. a violent reaction
b. different
c. a disease
d. without reason
- solitude
a. being alone
b. success
c. afraid
d. right now
- define
a. to last a long time
b. to get bigger
c. to explain clearly
d. to make easier
- organism
a. a religious building
b. a living thing
c. not believing
d. to send for
- horrifying
a. to get worse
b. basic
c. to write quickly
d. very unpleasant

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. shrine / riot

There was a _____ in the city yesterday, but the _____ was not damaged.

2. paraphrased / defined

For the book report, I _____ the book and clearly _____ the author's purpose for writing it.

3. expand / presently

There are 15 members in the group _____, but I expect that number to _____.

4. avail / solitude

His attempt to catch the train was to no _____. He spent hours in _____ waiting for the next one.

5. fundamental / worsen

The _____ point of my speech was to show that people need to act. If we don't do something, things will _____.

6. linger / scribble

I tried to _____ the information as fast as I could because I didn't have time to _____.

7. dreaded / horrifying

After seeing that _____ plane crash, I _____ flying.

8. incredulous / stark

She was _____ that there could be such a _____ contrast between boys' and girls' grades.

9. organism / summon

We should _____ scientists from around the world to study this new _____.

10. plague / random

At first we thought _____ people were getting sick. Then we realized that a _____ was spreading.

Thucydides and the Plague of Athens

Thucydides was the world's first historian. **Presently**, we get most of our knowledge about ancient Greece from his writing. But Thucydides didn't just write about history, he lived through it. However, he almost didn't survive one historical event: the **Plague of Athens**.

In 430 BCE, an army attacked the city of Athens, where Thucydides lived. Thousands of people hid from the army behind Athens' large walls. The city became very crowded as the population **expanded**. Then a **horrifying** disease broke out. People **summoned** doctors. But it was to no **avail** because no one understood how the disease spread. It seemed **random**. They didn't know that it was an **organism**. Instead, they **defined** disease as a punishment from their gods. Thucydides was **incredulous** that gods caused the plague, but he explained why others believed it. There was an old, long verse which predicted the disease. To **paraphrase** it, the verse said the gods would send a disease during a war. As a result, large crowds gathered at **shrines** to ask the gods to stop the plague. But the situation only **worsened** because these people were so close to each other they became sick. That's how they learned a **fundamental** lesson about the plague: it spread from person to person.

People wanted to leave the crowded city, but they **dreaded** what the army outside would do to them. At this time, Thucydides got sick, too. He quickly **scribbled** down notes because he thought he would soon die. His writing shows a **stark** contrast between people's behavior before and during the plague. There were **riots**, and people ignored laws. They didn't think they'd live long enough to be punished. Many sick people were left to die in **solitude** because no one wanted to be near them. The plague **lingered** for two years. But luckily, Thucydides survived. Without his writing, we would know much less about ancient Greece and the Plague of Athens.



توسیدید و طاعون آتن

توسیدید اولین مورخ جهان بود. در حال حاضر، ما بیشتر دانش خود در مورد یونان باستان را از نوشته‌های او به دست می‌آوریم. اما توسیدید فقط در مورد تاریخ نوشته بود، بلکه با آن زندگی کرد. با این حال، او تقریباً از یک رویداد تاریخی جان سالم به در نبرد: طاعون آتن در سال ۴۳۰ پیش از میلاد، ارتش دشمن به شهر آتن که توسیدید در آن زندگی می‌کرد حمله کرد. هزاران نفر از مردم پشت دیوارهای بزرگ آتن از ارتش مخفی شدند. وقتی جمعیت گسترش یافت شهر بسیار شلوغ شد. بعد یک بیماری وحشتناک شروع شد. مردم پزشکان را احضار کردند. اما فایده‌ای نداشت، زیرا هیچ‌کس نمی‌دانست چگونه این بیماری شیوع پیدا می‌کند. تصادفی به نظر می‌رسید. آن‌ها نمی‌دانستند که این یک موجود زنده است. در عوض، آن‌ها بیماری را به عنوان یک تنبیه از جانب خدایان خود تعریف کردند. توسیدید باور نمی‌کرد که خدایان آن بیماری را بوجود آورده باشند، اما او توضیح داد که چرا دیگران این موضوع را باور داشتند. یک کتاب بلند و طویل بود که بیماری را پیش‌بینی می‌کرد. به بیان دیگر، کتاب می‌گفت که خدایان در طول جنگ بیماری را خواهند فرستاد. در نتیجه جمعیت زیادی در مقبره‌ها جمع شدند تا از خدایان بخواهند که جلوی طاعون را بگیرند. اما اوضاع بدتر شد، زیرا این افراد به هم نزدیک بودند و بیمار می‌شدند. به این ترتیب آن‌ها یک درس اساسی در مورد طاعون را یاد گرفتند: از فردی به فرد دیگر سرایت می‌کند.

مردم می‌خواستند شهر شلوغ را ترک کنند، اما از آنچه که ارتش دشمن در بیرون قلعه بر سر آن‌ها می‌آورد وحشت داشتند. در این زمان، توسیدید هم مریض شد. او به سرعت یادداشت نوشت چون فکر می‌کرد به زودی خواهد مرد. نوشته‌های او تضاد شدیدی را بین رفتار مردم قبل و در طول بیماری نشان می‌دهد. در آنجا شورش‌هایی وجود داشت و مردم قوانین را نادیده می‌گرفتند. آن‌ها فکر نمی‌کردند که آن قدر زنده بمانند که مجازات شوند. بسیاری از بیماران در تنهایی زندگی می‌کردند، زیرا هیچ‌کس نمی‌خواست نزدیک آن‌ها باشد. طاعون به مدت دو سال باقی ماند. اما خوشبختانه توسیدید جان سالم بدر برد. بدون نوشتن او، ما بسیار کمتر درباره یونان باستان و طاعون می‌دانستیم.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ Presently, a horrifying plague has broken out in Athens.

2. ____ At first, people thought the spread of the disease was random.

3. ____ The people summoned doctors to no avail.

4. ____ Thucydides was incredulous that the plague was caused by an organism.

5. ____ By gathering in shrines, people made the plague worse.

6. ____ Thucydides luckily survived the plague.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did Athens' population expand?
 - a. Because the army moved into the city
 - b. Because people were hiding from the army
 - c. Because the army told people to enter
 - d. Because people dreaded the plague
2. Thucydides scribbled quickly because _____.
 - a. there were so many riots
 - b. he had to define the disease
 - c. he thought he'd die soon
 - d. there were too many sick people
3. What fundamental lesson did the people learn?
 - a. The plague was a punishment.
 - b. The plague was ended in the shrines.
 - c. The plague was from the army.
 - d. The plague was spread between people.
4. What is NOT true of Thucydides?
 - a. He was the world's first historian.
 - b. He thought gods caused the plague.
 - c. He survived the Plague of Athens.
 - d. He lived in the city of Athens.



n.

automobile ['ɔ:təmə(u)bi:l]

اتومبیل

- ❖ An automobile is a car.
- The first automobiles were very different from the ones that exist today.
- اولین اتومبیل بسیار متفاوت تر از اتومبیل های امروزی بود.



n.

candidate ['kændɪdət]

نامزد، کاندیدا

- ❖ A candidate is a person who is competing to win something such as a job.
- Alice is the best candidate for the job.
- آلیس بهترین کاندیدا برای این شغل است.

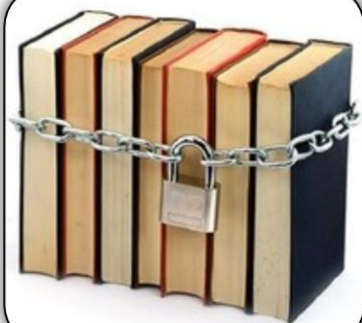


adj.

confidential [ˌkɒnfi'den(t)(ə)]

محرمانه

- ❖ If something is confidential, it must be kept secret.
- The information from the meeting is confidential.
- اطلاعات جلسه محرمانه است.



adj.

corporate ['kɔ:p(ə)rət]

مشارکتی، سهامی، گروهی

- ❖ If something is corporate, it is related to a large business.
- Tom enjoys working in the corporate world.
- تام از کار کردن در جهان مشارکتی لذت می برد.



v.

enhance

[ɪn'hɑ:n(t)s]

بالا بردن، افزایش دادن

- ❖ To enhance something is to make it better.
- Amy's blue shirt really enhances the color of her eyes.
- حقیقتاً رنگ آبی لباس ایمی، رنگ چشمانش را پررنگ تر کرده است.

n.

era

['ɪərə]

عصر، دوران

- ❖ An era is a period of time that has something special about it.
- During the medieval era, knights wore protective armor.
- در دوره قرون وسطی، شوالیه ها زره محافظ می پوشیدند.

n.

guideline

['gaɪdlaɪn]

رهنمود، راهنما، دستورالعمل

- ❖ A guideline is a rule about how to do something.
- Before they began the project, the teacher gave them some guidelines.
- معلم قبل از شروع پروژه به آن ها دستورالعمل هایی داد.

v.

incorporate

[ɪn'kɔ:p(ə)reɪt]

اضافه کردن

- ❖ To incorporate is to add something to another thing.
- I decided to incorporate a new ingredient into my cake recipe.
- تصمیم گرفتم که یک ماده ی جدید به دستور پخت کیکم اضافه کنم.

v.

interact

['ɪntərækt]

تعامل داشتن، متقابلاً عمل کردن



- ❖ To interact is to talk to or do something with another person.
- The kids began to interact when the adults left the room.
- وقتی که بزرگسالان از اتاق خارج شدند، بچه ها شروع به تعامل کردند.

n.

interval

['ɪntəv(ə)l]

وقفه، فاصله زمانی



- ❖ An interval is the time between two things happening.
- Tony rested for brief intervals while he worked in the yard.
- تونی هنگام کار در حیاط، برای مدت کوتاهی استراحت کرد.

adj.

mobile

['məʊbaɪl]

سیار، متحرک



- ❖ If something is mobile, it can be moved easily.
- mobile phones are popular because you can take them anywhere.
- تلفن های همراه بسیار مشهور هستند، چرا که آن ها را می توانید به هر جا ببرید.

v.

modify

['mɒdɪfaɪ]

اصلاح کردن، تغییر دادن



- ❖ To modify something is to change it a little bit.
- I modified my outfit by adding a belt to it.

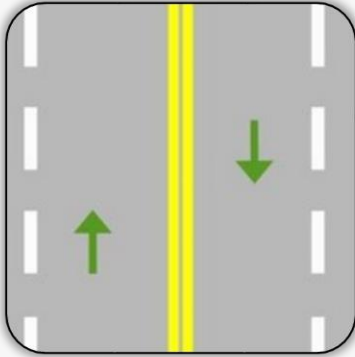
➤ با اضافه کردن کمربند به لباسم، آن را تغییر دادم.

n.

parallel

['pærəleɪ]

موازی



- ❖ If two things are parallel, they are the same distance away from each other.
- There are two yellow parallel lines dividing both sides of traffic.
- دو خط زرد موازی، دو سمت ترافیک را از هم جدا می کنند.

n.

phenomenon

[fi'nɒmɪnən]

پدیده



- ❖ A phenomenon is something that can be seen as it is happening.
- I was amazed when I saw the phenomenon of shooting stars.
- از دیدن پدیده شهاب سنگ شگفت زده شدم.

v.

pollute

[pə'lu:t]

آلوده کردن



- ❖ To pollute means to make air, water, or land dirty, unclean, or foul.
- The careless factory polluted the river with chemicals.
- کارخانه ی مسامحه کار، رودخانه را با مواد شیمیایی آلوده کرد.

v.

ridicule

['rɪdɪkjʊ:l]

مسخره کردن



- ❖ To ridicule is to make fun of something in a mean way.
- The other students ridicule Peter's foreign accent.
- سایر دانش آموزان لهجه ی خارجی پیتر را مسخره می کنند.



adj.

solar

['səʊlə]

خورشیدی



- ❖ If something is solar, it is related to the sun.
- Using solar energy is good for the environment.

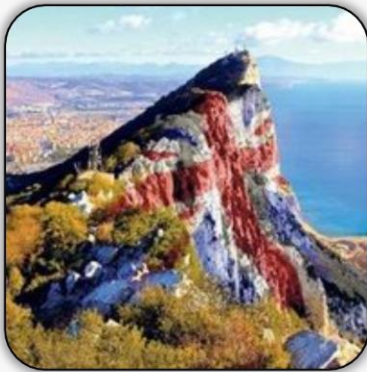
➤ استفاده از انرژی خورشیدی برای محیط زیست مفید است.

n.

territory

['terit(ə)rɪ]

قلمرو، سرزمین، منطقه



- ❖ A territory is a piece of land that belongs to a country but isn't a state.
- Gibraltar is a territory of Great Britain.

➤ جبل الطارق جزو قلمروی بریتانیای کبیر است.

n.

tournament

['tuənəmənt]

مسابقات، تورنمنت



- ❖ A tournament is a competition, usually with many people participating.
- My dad is playing in a golf tournament tomorrow.

➤ پدرم فردا در یک تورنمنت گلف بازی خواهد کرد.

n.

transportation

[ˌtræn(t)spɔ:'teɪʃ(ə)n]

وسیله نقلیه، حمل و نقل



- ❖ transportation is any type of vehicle that can carry people or things.
- I don't have a car, so my normal transportation is the train.

➤ من ماشین ندارم، پس وسیله ی نقلیه ی نرمال من قطار است.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. enhance / candidate

A survey found that not very many people like the _____. So he is trying to think of ways to _____ his image and make people like him.

2. era / solar

We live in a(n) _____ where people are very concerned about conserving our natural resources. Many people think using _____ energy is a good way to do this.

3. incorporate / pollute

The company doesn't want to _____ the air anymore, so they are going to _____ new rules for disposing waste.

4. corporate / confidential

The _____ files were locked in the basement. The information in them was about important customers and had to be kept _____.

5. mobile / phenomenon

In the early 1900s, music records were an amazing _____. People back then would have been even more amazed by today's _____ music players.

6. automobile / parallel

The old _____ was very large and difficult to drive. Jane had trouble parking it between the _____ lines in the parking lot.

7. ridiculed / transportation

Ben didn't listen to my advice about _____. Instead, he _____ me and continued to drive fast, eventually causing an accident.

8. guidelines / intervals

The _____ for the race are very simple: just run as fast as you can. There will be short _____ when you can stop for a drink of water.

9. modify / territories

The government decided to _____ its borders. It made several of its _____ smaller so that it could create a new one.

10. tournament / interact

The baseball _____ is always a lot of fun. It allows students from all over the city to _____ with each other.

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Factories built in the early 1900s contine to unleash chemicals into the air.

2. My soccer team is playing in a competition next weekend.

3. When the new buildings are finished, they will be the same distance away from each other.

4. In order for my science project to work, I need to alter it.

5. Amy hurt Jane's feelings when she made fun of her.

6. In this period of time, it's more common for kids to play video games than read books.

7. Kate is very shy and doesn't like to talk to and do things with the other girls.

8. Tom wants to add more colors into his painting.

9. My grandfather used to race cars across the long distances in endurance races.

10. The person competing for the job interviewed very well.

Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which of the following means confidential?
a. soft b. compete c. moveable d. secret
2. What is the word solar related to?
a. Lines b. Land c. The sun d. A car
3. Which of these is mobile?
a. A tree b. A bus c. A building d. A sidewalk
4. Which of the following is a form of transportation?
a. a friend b. an airplane c. a new job d. a meal
5. Which of these words are related to corporate?
a. Business b. Time c. Competition d. Winning

The Solar Car Race

We live in a **mobile** society. But the cars we drive require too much gas, plus they **pollute** the air. Eventually, the natural resources used to make gas will run out. So what happens then? Many people think **solar-powered automobiles** are the answer. To learn more about this type of **transportation**, teams from universities and **corporate** organizations gather in Australia every two years for a solar car race.

The race is called the *World Solar Challenge*. **Candidates** for this **tournament** must design their own cars. The teams keep all their plans **confidential**. They don't **interact** with other teams because the race is very competitive. And these cars aren't just **enhanced** and **modified** versions of normal cars. They are completely different.

The cars only have room for one person and are very simple inside—they don't even have a cushion for the driver to sit on. These cars are shorter and much more flat than normal cars. Most importantly, the cars **incorporate** solar panels onto the outside that lie **parallel** to each other. These panels are made from materials that take in light from the sun and turn it into electric energy. That's how they move.

These cars race over 3,000 kilometers across the Australian **territories**. The drivers have to heed strict **guidelines**. They must stop at certain **intervals** to charge their batteries. And unlike normal race cars, they can't go very fast. They have to drive at the normal speed limits. Although the drivers want to finish the race quickly, that is not the main goal. The objective is to see how well the cars work under normal driving conditions.

Because of the World Solar Challenge, a new **era** in car making and in driving is beginning. People may **ridicule** the solar cars because they look strange, but this is a **phenomenon** that isn't going away. Using the technology from the vehicles, car makers will eventually create solar cars for the rest of us.



مسابقه ماشین‌های خورشیدی

ما در یک جامعه سیار زندگی می‌کنیم. اما ماشین‌هایی که ما رانندگی می‌کنیم به بنزین خیلی زیادی نیاز دارند به علاوه هوا را آلوده می‌کنند. در نهایت، منابع طبیعی مورد استفاده برای ساخت بنزین از بین خواهند رفت. پس چه اتفاقی می‌افتد؟ بسیاری از مردم فکر می‌کنند که اتومبیل‌های با انرژی خورشیدی پاسخ هستند. برای کسب اطلاعات بیشتر در مورد این نوع حمل و نقل، تیم‌هایی از دانشگاه‌ها و سازمان‌های شرکتی هر دو سال یکبار برای یک مسابقه ماشین خورشیدی در استرالیا جمع می‌شوند.

این مسابقه به عنوان قهرمانی انرژی خورشیدی شناخته می‌شود. داوطلبان برای این مسابقات باید خودروهای خود را طراحی کنند. تیم‌ها تمام برنامه‌های خود را محرمانه نگه می‌دارند. آن‌ها با تیم‌های دیگر تعامل نمی‌کنند چون مسابقه بسیار رقابتی است. و این ماشین‌ها تنها نسخه‌های بهبودیافته و اصلاح‌شده ماشین‌های معمولی نیستند. آن‌ها کاملاً متفاوت هستند. ماشین‌ها فقط برای یک نفر جا دارند و در داخل خیلی ساده هستند - آن‌ها حتی یک کو سن برای نشستن راننده ندارند. این ماشین‌ها کوتاه‌تر و بسیار صاف‌تر از ماشین‌های معمولی هستند. از همه مهم‌تر، این اتومبیل‌ها صفحات خورشیدی را در بیرون قرار می‌دهند که موازی با یکدیگر قرار دارند. این پانل‌ها از موادی ساخته می‌شوند که نور خورشید را جذب می‌کنند و آن را به انرژی الکتریکی تبدیل می‌کنند. این روشی است که این ماشین‌ها حرکت می‌کنند.

این خودروها بیش از ۳۰۰۰ کیلومتر در مناطق استرالیا رقابت می‌کنند. رانندگان باید به دستورالعمل‌های سختگیرانه‌ای توجه کنند. آن‌ها باید در فواصل معین توقف کنند تا باتری‌ها را شارژ کنند. و بر خلاف ماشین‌های مسابقه معمولی، آن‌ها نمی‌توانند خیلی سریع حرکت کنند. آن‌ها مجبورند با محدودیت‌های سرعت معمولی رانندگی کنند. اگرچه رانندگان می‌خواهند به سرعت مسابقه را تمام کنند، اما این هدف اصلی نیست. هدف این است که ببینیم ماشین‌ها چطور تحت شرایط رانندگی معمولی کار می‌کنند.

به دلیل چالش‌های جهانی انرژی خورشیدی، عصری جدید در ساخت خودرو و رانندگی در حال آغاز است. ممکن است مردم خودروهای خورشیدی را مورد تمسخر قرار دهند، زیرا آن‌ها عجیب به نظر می‌رسند، اما این پدیده‌ای است که از بین نمی‌رود. با استفاده از فن‌آوری وسایل نقلیه، سازندگان خودرو در نهایت ماشین‌های خورشیدی برای بقیه ما تولید خواهند کرد.



n.

bill

[bɪl]

صورت‌حساب، قبض

- ❖ A bill is a statement of money owed for goods or a service.
- I have so many bills that I do not know how to pay for them all.
- آنقدر قبض دارم که نمی دانم چطور همه ی آن ها را پرداخت کنم.



n.

boundary

['baʊnd(ə)rɪ]

مرز، حد

- ❖ A boundary is the line where one area of land stops, and another begins.
- This fence shows the boundary between our yard and yours.
- این نرده مرز حیاط ما و شما را نشان می دهد.



n.

chaos

['keɪɔs]

هرج و مرج، آشوب، آشفتگی

- ❖ chaos is a situation that is confusing and not ordered.
- His presentation was in chaos. I couldn't understand what he meant.
- ارائه ی او آشفته بود، من متوجه منظور او نشدم.



adj.

consistent

[kən'sɪst(ə)nt]

ثابت، استوار، ثابت قدم

- ❖ If a person is consistent, they keep the same behavior or attitude.
- Sara comes in every day and is our most consistent worker.
- سارا هر روز می آید و کارمند ثابت ما می باشد.

n.

cyclone

['saɪkləʊn]

گردباد



- ❖ A cyclone is a large storm with heavy rain and winds that spin in a circle.
- Hundreds of homes were damaged by the cyclone.

➤ صدها خانه توسط گردباد آسیب دیدند.

adj.

doomed

[du:md]

محکوم به نابودی



- ❖ If someone or something is doomed, they are going to fail or be destroyed.
- Since I spent all my money, my date with Jane is doomed.

➤ از آن جایی که تمام پولم را خرج کردم، قرارم با جین به فنا رفت.

n.

heir

[eə]

وارث



- ❖ An heir is a person who receives money or property of someone who dies.
- The princess was the heir to the king and queen's throne.

➤ پرنسس وارث تخت پادشاه و ملکه بود.

adj.

martial

['ma:ʃ(ə)l]

رزمی



- ❖ If something is martial, it is related to fighting or war.
- Karate is a martial art that began many years ago in Japan.

➤ کاراته یک هنر رزمی می باشد که سال ها پیش در ژاپن ایجاد شد.



adj.

organic

[ɔ:'gænik]

طبیعی، ارگانیک

- ❖ If food is organic, it is grown without adding chemicals to it.
- The organic carrots are more expensive, but they're better for you.
- هویج های ارگانیک گرانتر هستند، اما آن ها برای شما مفید تر هستند.

n.

poultry

['pəʊltri]

طیور، مرغ و خروس



- ❖ poultry is a bird, such as a chicken, that is used for meat and eggs.
- He raises poultry and sells their meat for extra money.
- او طیور پرورش می دهد و گوشت آن ها را برای پول بیشتر می فروشد.

v.

scramble

['skræmbɪ]

چهار دست و پا رفتن



- ❖ To scramble is to move somewhere quickly and desperately.
- The hikers scrambled down the side of the hill.
- کوهنوردان از کنار تپه چهار دست و پا پایین رفتند.

n.

sergeant

['sɑ:dʒ(ə)nt]

گروهبان



- ❖ A sergeant is a soldier or police officer of middle rank.
- He was promoted to sergeant after a year in the army.
- وی پس از یک سال خدمت در ارتش به گروهبانی ارتقاء یافت.

adj.

sheer

[ʃɪə]

محض، مطلق



- ❖ If you describe something as sheer, it is complete and very strong.
- I was impressed by her sheer dedication to jogging.

➤ من از اینکه او مطلقا خود را وقف دویدن کرده است، تحت تاثیر قرار گرفتم.

n.

stance

[stæŋ(t)s]

موضع، نظر، دیدگاه



- ❖ A stance is an attitude about an issue that someone states clearly.
- My stance is that using oil and gas is bad for the environment.

➤ دیدگاه من این است که استفاده از نفت و بنزین برای محیط زیست مضر است.

n.

telegraph

['telɪgrɑ:f]

تلگراف



- ❖ A telegraph is a method of sending electric messages on wires.
- In the 1900s, the telegraph was the fastest way to send a message.

➤ در سال 1900، تلگراف سریع ترین راه ارسال پیام بود.

n.

textile

['tekstail]

پارچه



- ❖ textile is cloth that has been woven or knitted.
- The blue textile was going to be used to make blouses.

➤ از پارچه ی آبی برای دوخت بلوز استفاده می شد.

n.

tornado

[tɔ:'neɪdəʊ]

گرد باد



- ❖ A tornado is a tube-shaped formation of air that spins very quickly.
- During a tornado, the safest place to be is underground.
- در حین گردباد، امن ترین مکان زیرزمین است.

n.

typhoon

[taɪ'fu:n]

توفان، گردباد



- ❖ A typhoon is a large tropical storm that moves in circles.
- Thousands of people lost electricity after a typhoon hit Australia.
- پس از توفان در استرالیا، برق هزاران نفر قطع شد.

v.

wail

[weɪl]

شیون کردن، زاری کردن



- ❖ To wail is to show sadness by crying loudly.
- The baby wailed because it was hungry.
- بچه به دلیل گرسنگی گریه کرد.

n.

wardrobe

['wɔ:drəʊb]

کمد لباس، مجموعه لباس



- ❖ A wardrobe is the collection of all of a person's clothing.
- She bought some new clothes to expand her wardrobe.
- او برای گسترش کمد لباسش، تعدادی لباس جدید خرید.

Exercise 1

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- Which of the following is a kind of storm?
 - A typhoon
 - A bill
 - A sergeant
 - A boundary
- Which of the following would come from a farm?
 - Organic vegetables
 - Wool textiles
 - A person's wardrobe
 - Short telegraphs
- Which of the following would help students taking a test?
 - Reading in chaos
 - Sheer luck
 - Taking martial arts classes
 - Consistent studying
- Who should expect to receive something?
 - A brave sergeant
 - A dead man's heir
 - A man with a strong stance
 - A man who needs a bill
- Which of the following would be loudest?
 - Cooked poultry
 - A scrambling woman
 - A doomed project
 - Wailing children
- Which word is not related to martial arts?
 - Taekwondo
 - Karate
 - Judo
 - Tango
- What can a person get from poultry?
 - Meat
 - Fruit
 - Pants
 - Soldiers
- What is part of a person's wardrobe?
 - A dog
 - A vegetable
 - A dress
 - A teacher
- Where would you most likely find a sergeant?
 - In a store
 - In an army
 - In a factory
 - In a class
- Which situation is full of chaos?
 - A man driving a car
 - Students reading
 - A girl walking
 - Armies fighting

PART A Match the phrases to make complete sentences.

1. The **heir** of Mr. Smith's fortune _____.
2. This is a **martial** matter, _____.
3. The kids started **wailing** _____.
4. I used the **telegraph** to _____.
5. Everyone **scrambled** to _____.
6. The **sergeant** ordered the _____.
7. He's very **consistent** and _____.
8. When the **cyclone** arrives, _____.
9. The **boundary** of my land _____.
10. First we color the **textiles**, _____.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. there will be a lot of wind and rain | b. when their toys were taken away |
| c. is the fence not the road | d. and the soldiers should take care of it |
| e. other soldiers to march | f. never really changes his attitude |
| g. avoid the rushing water | h. and then we make them into clothes. |
| i. will become very rich | j. tell my family about the new baby |

PART B Match the clauses to make complete sentences.

1. During the summer, we always keep a supply of food and water in the basement _____.
2. He didn't like a strong central government, _____.
3. He failed the test, _____.
4. I won't go to fast food restaurants _____.
5. I was disappointed _____.
6. The police were called _____.
7. We all took shelter, _____.
8. He quickly took out his credit card, _____.
9. I want to buy a new suit, _____.
10. She lost a few kilos _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. because I only eat organic food | b. because the event turned into chaos |
| c. so he could pay the bill | d. because she ate only poultry and fruit |
| e. but that doesn't mean the school years is doomed | |
| f. because of their sheer lack of sportsmanship | |
| g. but my wardrobe is pretty full | h. so we knew his stance on politics |
| i. since the typhoon was raging | j. because that's when tornados are common |

The Heirs

Martin, Paul and Tom were brothers. They were very different, but they were **consistent** about two things. They couldn't succeed in business, and they never agreed about anything. Martin was a hardworking farmer, growing **organic** vegetables and raising **poultry**. But he was disorganized and forgot to pay his **bills**. Paul owned a **textile** factory that produced clothes. He was organized, but he was greedy and took too much clothing. His **wardrobe** was filled with his own products. Tom was once a **sergeant** in the army. He ran a **martial** arts school, but his **stance** on discipline was too strong. He had almost no students.

One day, they received a **telegraph** saying that their father had died. They were **heirs** to his old farm. They planned to sell it as soon as possible, so they went to see it even though there was a terrible storm. The house didn't look great, but there was a lot of land. There was so much, in fact, that they could barely see its **boundary**.

Suddenly, the storm got worse. The **sheer** force of the wind almost knocked them over. Martin said, "Look, it's a **typhoon!**" Paul said, "No, it's a **cyclone.**" Tom said, "No, it's a **tornado!**" They argued until Paul began to **wail** and said, "Whatever it is, it's coming right at us! We're **doomed!**" The three brothers **scrambled** inside the old house. Martin said, "If we survive, we must stop fighting. This farm could be great if we fixed it up. With my hard work, Paul's organization and Tom's discipline, we could run a great business together!" The storm finally ended. And luckily, it didn't wreck the farm.

"Just think," Martin said, "it took the **chaos** of a typhoon to bring us together." Paul replied, "You mean a cyclone brought us together." Tom said, "Didn't I tell you both that it was a tornado?" The brothers never agreed on what kind of storm it was, but by combining their skills, they started a successful farm.



ورات

مارتین، پل و تام برادر بودند. آن‌ها بسیار متفاوت بودند، اما در مورد دو چیز توافق داشتند. آن‌ها نتوانستند در کسب‌وکار موفق شوند، و هرگز درباره هیچ چیز توافق نکردند. مارتین یک کشاورز سخت کوش در حوزه پرورش سبزیجات ارگانیک و پرورش طیور بود. ولی او بی نظم بود و فراموش می‌کرد که قبض‌های خود را بپردازد. پل یک کارخانه نساجی داشت که لباس تولید می‌کرد. او منظم بود، اما حریص بود و بیش از حد لباس می‌پوشید. کم‌لباس او پر از محصولات خودش بود. تام یک‌بار گروه‌بان ارتش شد. او یک مدرسه هنرهای رزمی را اداره می‌کرد، اما موضع او در زمینه انضباط بیش از حد قوی بود. تقریباً هیچ دانش‌آموزی نداشت.

یک روز، آن‌ها تلگرافی دریافت کردند که حاکی از فوت پدرشان بود. آن‌ها وارث مزرعه قدیمی او بودند. آن‌ها قصد داشتند هر چه زودتر آن را بفروشند، بنابراین به دیدن مزرعه رفتند، هر چند که طوفان مهیبی وجود داشت. زیربنای خانه زیاد به نظر نمی‌رسید، اما زمین‌های زیادی وجود داشت. در واقع آنقدر زیاد بود که به سختی می‌توانستند مرزهای آن را ببینند.

ناگهان طوفان بدتر شد. نیروی محض باد تقریباً آن‌ها را در بر گرفته بود. مارتین گفت " نگاه کن، این یک طوفان است!" " پل گفت: " نه، این یک گردباد است " تام گفت: " نه، این یک طغیان است!" آن‌ها بحث کردند تا اینکه پاول شروع به شیون و زاری کرد و گفت: " هر چه باشد، درست به سمت ما می‌آید! ما محکوم به فنا هستیم!" سه برادر وارد خانه قدیمی شدند. مارتین گفت اگر زنده بمانیم باید جنگ را متوقف کنیم. اگر آن را ثابت کنیم، این مزرعه می‌تواند بزرگ باشد. با کار سخت من، سازمان پاول و انضباط تام، ما می‌توانیم یک کار بزرگ را با هم انجام دهیم! طوفان سرانجام به پایان رسید. خوشبختانه، مزرعه را ویران نکرده بود.

مارتین گفت: " فقط فکرش را بکن، هرچ‌ومرج یک طوفان لازم بود تا ما را به هم نزدیک کند." پاول گفت: " منظورت این است که گردباد ما را به هم نزدیک کرد " تام گفت: " آیا من به شما نگفتم که این یک طغیان است؟" این سه برادر هرگز توافق نکردند که چه نوع طوفانی بوده‌است، اما با ترکیب مهارت‌هایشان، آن‌ها یک مزرعه موفق را آغاز کردند.

PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. ____ Tom was a farmer who grew organic vegetables and poultry.

2. ____ Paul's wardrobe was filled with clothes from his factory.

3. ____ Tom was a sergeant in the army before running a martial arts school.

4. ____ Martin's stance on discipline was too strong.

5. ____ The brothers learned of their father's death through a telegraph.

6. ____ The brothers could see the land's boundary.

PART B Answer the questions.

1. The brothers were consistent about what two things?

a. Good farming and arguing	b. Bad farming and business
c. Bad business and arguing	d. Good business and arguing
2. The brothers were almost knocked down by _____.

a. Tom's bills	b. the chaos of the storm
c. Paul's wardrobe	d. the sheer force of the wind
3. Why wasn't Paul's textile factory successful?

a. He was greedy and took home clothes.	b. He gave away too much money.
c. He was too disorganized.	d. He was too mean.
4. Who was the father's heir?

a. Martin	b. Tom
c. Paul	d. All three men

Index

A

absolute 38
accent 110
access 50
accident 14
account 44
accurate 140
admiral 14
admonish 20
affect 80
afflicted 116
aircraft 152
aisle 116
alas 38
alliance 68
alongside 56
alternative 74
although 92
altogether 98
analyze 140
animate 62
appetite 56
applause 68
apply 92
arc 14
architect 44
armed 68
aroma 8
assist 56
assumption 158
asteroid 140
atmosphere 116
attentive 38
audible 20
author 116
authoritative 68
autograph 80
automobile 176
avail 170
avenue 74
await 92
awesome 20
awhile 32

B

background 128
bait 128
barber 110
barley 158
basement 110
bead 80
beak 26
beast 158
belly 74
beloved 92
beneficial 164
betray 122
beverage 8
beware 20
bid 74
bill 182
bind 98
birthplace 164
blank 110
blast 122
blink 110
blow 74
boundary 182
bracelet 122
brag 20
breakdown 116
breeze 56
brew 80
brick 86
bruise 98
bury 92

C

candidate 176
capacity 164
cape 38
cargo 116
cease 122
celebrity 152
ceremony 68
chaos 182

chapter 116
character 14
charity 134
charm 80
cherish 146
choir 110
choke 122
chronicle 128
civil 122
civilization 104
classify 62
climate 92
cluster 8
colonel 158
combine 8
comic 110
comment 122
commerce 134
comparative 164
compassion 146
complain 92
complicate 110
comprehensive 164
conceal 44
concede 62
concept 62
concrete 152
condemn 134
condensed 8
conduct 50
confidential 176
conflict 74
confuse 92
connect 116
conscience 14
conscious 20
consent 146
conserve 164
consistent 182
constant 50
construct 62
contagious 158
contemporary 8
continent 74

controversy 140
convenient 104
copper 128
core 146
corporate 176
corpse 158
cozy 134
crack 50
crime 44
crisis 158
cross 122
crucial 164
crumble 86
cultivate 8
culture 68
cumulative 164
cunning 146
cure 158
current 74
custom 98
cyberspace 32
cyclone 182

D

damp 26
decade 62
decisive 152
decline 110
deed 44
defense 68
define 170
deformed 158
defy 56
den 104
dent 122
deplete 134
deposit 164
destiny 80
detail 68
device 50
dew 104
diagram 62
disagree 20

- disapprove 26
 discriminate 158
 disease 128
 disobedient 98
 display 56
 disrespect 74
 distribute 164
 distrust 122
 diverse 68
 divine 8
 dizzy 146
 doomed 182
 dough 86
 drastic 104
 dread 170
 due 92
- E**
- echo 20
 economy 134
 edit 32
 efficient 56
 embassy 159
 empire 134
 enchant 68
 enclose 50
 enhance 176
 enthusiasm 74
 entire 92
 envision 38
 equator 165
 equilibrium 146
 equip 69
 era 176
 errand 110
 essay 32
 establish 93
 esteemed 152
 etc. 116
 ethical 152
 evaluate 32
 evenly 38
 eventual 20
- evolve 140
 except 26
 exception 69
 exit 104
 exotic 165
 expand 170
 express 86
 extinct 152
 extinguish 159
- F**
- factor 140
 faint 32
 federal 165
 feeble 56
 ferry 62
 fiery 14
 fist 86
 flesh 14
 flexible 86
 flight 26
 flint 159
 flip 116
 flock 104
 flush 86
 fold 104
 folk 38
 folklore 128
 fond 26
 foresee 98
 forgive 56
 formation 165
 fort 123
 foster 146
 found 123
 frequency 165
 fundamental 170
 furnace 93
- G**
- genetic 140
 genome 140
- genre 69
 glimpse 98
 global 32
 glove 111
 goods 134
 grapefruit 14
 gratitude 44
 grind 146
 grip 50
 growl 146
 guideline 176
 gymnasium 32
- H**
- habitat 44
 halt 50
 handy 62
 harass 159
 hardy 152
 harsh 75
 hay 14
 heed 134
 heir 182
 hermit 111
 highlight 32
 hint 20
 hitchhike 134
 hoop 98
 horn 80
 horrified 14
 horrifying 170
 humid 8
- I**
- identical 140
 idiot 21
 idle 117
 ignorant 32
 immense 21
 immoral 26
 impact 69
 impending 50
- incorporate 176
 incredulous 170
 index 33
 indirect 21
 infect 128
 influence 50
 injure 86
 institute 152
 integrate 159
 intellectual 140
 interact 176
 interval 176
 intervene 44
 irritable 80
 isolate 62
 itch 128
 ivy 26
- J**
- jealousy 152
 justly 111
- K**
- kerosene 15
- L**
- lag 80
 landmark 44
 law 51
 lean 75
 leash 93
 leather 111
 lecture 33
 legal 44
 lid 104
 linger 170
 lining 123
 literature 128
 lively 56
 longing 63

loom 104
 loop 15
 lump 86
 lure 69

M

majestic 57
 majority 141
 mammal 141
 martial 182
 mass 123
 mature 93
 maximize 80
 meantime 75
 measure 93
 melt 38
 memorable 45
 midst 93
 mighty 105
 migrate 153
 millennium 128
 miniature 159
 mischief 75
 misery 93
 misfortune 98
 mixture 86
 moan 26
 mobile 177
 mock 135
 mode 51
 moderation 147
 modify 177
 moral 33
 multiply 141
 muscle 75
 mushroom 105
 myth 129

N

native 105
 negative 98
 neutral 135

nightmare 81
 nor 57
 notify 117
 numerous 63
 nurture 153
 nutrition 159
 nutritious 81

O

objective 165
 oblige 45
 oblivious 26
 obstacle 69
 odor 8
 offense 45
 offspring 141
 operate 33
 option 21
 organic 182
 organism 170
 outraged 57
 overhead 153
 oxygen 165

P

paddle 15
 palate 9
 paradise 9
 parallel 177
 paraphrase 170
 particle 63
 pastime 21
 patch 38
 pea 117
 per 99
 perfect 21
 perish 27
 persecute 135
 perspire 51
 pessimistic 57
 pesticide 141
 phenomenon 177

pinpoint 21
 pit 27
 pity 135
 plague 171
 plantation 9
 plea 63
 plead 99
 pleasure 38
 poison 105
 pollute 177
 ponder 111
 pop 39
 poultry 182
 pray 123
 predator 147
 presently 171
 principle 153
 prior 93
 private 33
 proclaim 45
 promote 129
 promptly 159
 protein 81
 pudding 39

R

raft 15
 rail 39
 rainforest 165
 raisin 117
 rally 45
 random 171
 rapid 9
 rate 9
 recent 33
 recipe 39
 reconcile 87
 reduce 135
 reed 105
 refrain 63
 regulate 141
 reinforce 141
 relate 129

religion 129
 replace 51
 rescue 75
 research 93
 reserve 111
 resolution 33
 resolve 45
 resource 45
 retain 117
 review 63
 ridicule 177
 rife 123
 rim 27
 riot 171
 rip 99
 role 39
 roost 27
 ruin 87
 rumor 57
 rural 153

S

sake 99
 sane 147
 saucer 147
 scramble 183
 scrape 99
 scribble 171
 scribe 135
 script 111
 search 111
 secluded 153
 semester 33
 sentence 45
 sergeant 183
 shatter 87
 sheer 183
 shelter 69
 shield 105
 shrine 171
 shrink 39
 shutter 87
 sift 87

- signature 81
 slam 111
 slap 57
 slight 87
 slippery 27
 sly 51
 smash 57
 snap 51
 snatch 147
 soak 39
 soar 27
 solar 177
 sole 123
 solitude 171
 soothing 9
 sophisticated 63
 sort 69
 sour 15
 source 99
 spark 39
 sparkle 87
 species 153
 spirit 39
 sprinkle 87
 stagger 147
 staircase 111
 stake 15
 stale 87
 stance 183
 stark 171
 state 117
 stern 99
 steward 15
 stitch 99
 stormy 105
 strategy 165
 stricken 141
 string 15
 stuff 81
 stumble 147
 subconscious 81
 subject 57
 subtle 9
 succession 75
 suit 39
 sum 129
 summon 171
 supply 69
 surrender 63
 swamp 153
 sway 105
 sweep 123
 switch 21
- T**
- technician 159
 telegraph 183
 teller 129
 temper 135
 tend 51
 tense 147
 terrain 75
 territory 177
 textile 183
 texture 9
 thorn 15
 thorough 21
 throne 135
 thump 99
 timid 75
 torment 21
 tornado 183
 tournament 177
 toxic 9
 transportation 177
 traverse 153
 tray 117
 treachery 123
 trivial 27
 tropics 159
 trustworthy 129
 tuck 123
 tumble 147
 typewritten 33
 typhoon 183
 typical 27
- U**
- unfortunate 117
 unity 135
 update 129
 upright 63
 urban 105
 utter 87
 utterly 27
- V**
- vain 69
 valid 51
 van 81
 variety 93
 vary 9
 vast 141
 vegetarian 141
 vehement 99
 vein 129
 venom 129
 version 51
 victor 135
 violence 75
 vivid 117
 volunteer 45
 vomit 117
- W**
- wade 105
 wage 57
 wail 183
 wardrobe 183
 warn 81
 weep 27
 weird 33
 whatsoever 51
 whereas 57
 withhold 147
 witness 45
 wooded 165
 workout 81
 worsen 171
 worthwhile 63
 wreck 15
- Z**
- zoology 153
 zoom 81

Unit 1

Exercise 1

1. rapid / rate
2. contemporary / vary
3. humid / toxic
4. texture / aroma
5. cluster / combined
6. subtle / soothing
7. cultivated / odor
8. palate / beverage
9. condensed / divine
10. paradise / plantations

Exercise 2

Part A

1. i
2. e
3. c
4. g
5. b
6. a
7. f
8. h
9. d
10. j

Part B

1. g
2. i
3. h
4. a

5. j
6. e
7. f
8. c
9. d
10. b

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. T
3. F The **Aztecs** cultivated chocolate trees on plantations.
4. T
5. F The first chocolate beverages were made **by the Mayans and Aztecs.**
6. T

Part B

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. c

Answer Key

Unit 2

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a
2. d
3. d
4. b
5. b

Part B

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. d

Exercise 2

1. admiral
2. sour
3. Kerosene
4. conscience
5. grapefruits
6. steward
7. fiery
8. string
9. hay
10. hoop

Exercise 3

1. stake
2. flesh

3. wreck
4. accident
5. character

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. T
3. F The admiral put **branches with sharp thorns** in the monkey's cages.
4. F The steward had **a good** conscience.
5. F The **steward** was horrified because the monkeys were thin and weak.
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. b
3. c
4. b

Unit 3

Exercise 1

1. option / idiot
2. torment / admonished
3. pinpoint / echoed
4. brag / perfect
5. switch / beware
6. eventual / pastime
7. awesome / disagreed
8. audible /conscious
9. immense / indirect
10. hint / thorough

Exercise 2

Part A

1. b
2. j
3. f
4. a
5. i
6. e
7. d
8. g
9. h
10. c

Part B

1. e
2. j
3. h

4. i
5. a
6. c
7. d
8. g
9. b
10. f

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. T
3. T
4. F When the young man had an option of two trails, he always chose the **more difficult of the two**.
5. T
6. F When the young man arrived home, he knew that **he** had acted like an idiot.

Part B

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. a

Unit 4

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. c
6. b
7. a
8. a
9. d
10. b

Exercise 2

1. perish / oblivious
2. roost / fond
3. rim / pit
4. soars / flight
5. moan / weep
6. typical / immoral
7. except / beak
8. trivial / disapprove
9. utterly / ivy
10. slippery / damp

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F **Eagle** had a roost near the pit.
3. T
4. T
5. F Fox was oblivious to the hidden **animals**.
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. d
4. d

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1. operate / cyberspace
2. recent / global
3. ignorant / weird
4. essays / edit
5. semester / index
6. fainted / lecture
7. typewritten / highlighted
8. resolution / gymnasium
9. moral / awhile
10. evaluated / private

Exercise 2

Part A

1. g
2. e
3. a
4. i
5. c
6. b
7. j
8. h
9. f
10. d

Part B

1. e
2. g
3. c
4. j

5. i
6. b
7. f
8. h
9. d
10. a

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F The private study rooms were **downstairs**.
3. F The computers in the private study rooms **were** operating correctly.
4. T
5. F The geography test was worth **seventy** percent of the final grade.
6. T

Part B

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. b

Answer Key

Unit 6

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. a

Part B

1. b
2. a
3. a
4. d
5. c

Exercise 2

Part A

1. g
2. c
3. b
4. j
5. f
6. i
7. d
8. a
9. e
10. h

Part B

1. e

2. c
3. j
4. b
5. f
6. d
7. h
8. a
9. i
10. g

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F **Jack Frost** likes playing tricks on folks.
2. T
3. F Jack Frost's role is to decorate everything with **frost and ice**.
4. T
5. T
6. F When Jack Frost set fire to the food, the **butter** started to melt.

Part B

1. a
2. d
3. b
4. c

Unit 7

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. d

Part B

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. a
5. c

Exercise 2

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. d
5. d

Exercise 3

1. resources
2. rally
3. memorable
4. offense
5. account
6. obliged
7. proclaimed

8. volunteered
9. habitat
10. gratitude

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F The architect wanted to build a new **office building**.
2. T
3. T
4. T
5. F The people could not conceal their gratitude, so they cheered.
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. d

Answer Key

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1. replace / conduct
2. influenced / laws
3. gripped / snapped
4. enclosed / whatsoever
5. impending / constantly
6. cracks / tends
7. device / mode
8. halted / access
9. valid / version
10. perspired / sly

Exercise 2

Part A

1. f
2. a
3. e
4. b
5. j
6. d
7. g
8. c
9. h
10. i

Part B

1. h
2. i
3. e
4. f

5. b
6. a
7. d
8. c
9. j
10. g

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F Janie thought constantly about a device that played **music**.
2. T
3. F Janie found the player when she **reached into** the bag.
4. T
5. F When Linda put the player to "on" mode, **it didn't work**.
6. T

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b

Unit 9

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. d

Part B

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. a
5. d

Exercise 2

1. alongside
2. assist
3. rumor
4. wages
5. smashed
6. feeble
7. efficient
8. subject
9. outraged
10. forgave

Exercise 3

1. b
2. c

3. b
4. a
5. b

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. T
3. F George was a **strong** boy with a **large** appetite.
4. T
5. F George was a **lazy** student who **didn't like any** subjects.
6. T

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. d

Unit 10

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a
2. d
3. c
4. b
5. c

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. a
5. d

Exercise 2

1. particle / animate
2. numerous / handy
3. classify / upright
4. longing, plea
5. worthwhile, sophisticated
6. concept, review
7. isolate, diagram
8. constructed, decades
9. ferry, concede
10. refrain, surrender

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F Anton had a longing to become **famous**.
3. T
4. T
5. F **Anton** drew diagrams of the bacteria.
6. F **The scientists** took a ferry to Holland.

Part B

1. d
2. b
3. d
4. a

Unit 11

Exercise 1

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. a
5. b

Exercise 2

1. sort
2. enchanted
3. applause
4. vain
5. diverse
6. genre
7. ceremony
8. defense
9. obstacles
10. exception

Exercise 3

Part A

1. e
2. h
3. i
4. a
5. f
6. d
7. b
8. c
9. j

10. g

Part B

1. e
2. h
3. a
4. j
5. b
6. d
7. i
8. c
9. f
10. g

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F Baker's first job was to carry messages written in code to and from **Resistance** members.

2. T

3. T

4. F In 1940, armed soldiers entered **Paris**.

5. T

6. T

Part B

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. a

Unit 12

Exercise 1

1. muscles / violence
2. bid / belly
3. timid / disrespect
4. enthusiasm / continent
5. meantime / lean
6. avenue / alternative
7. rescue / conflict
8. terrain / harsh
9. mischief / succession
10. blow / current

Exercise 2

1. continent
2. terrain
3. succession
4. avenue
5. lean
6. alternative
7. current
8. meantime
9. harsh
10. violence

Exercise 3

1. a
2. a
3. c
4. a
5. c

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F The North Wind **did not blow** the jacket off of the man.
3. T
4. F The **man** was the target for the North Wind.
5. F The Sun was usually timid but did teach the North Wind a lesson.
6. T

Part B

1. a
2. d
3. c
4. d

Unit 13

Exercise 1

1. b
2. a
3. a
4. a
5. a

Exercise 2

1. autograph
2. nightmares
3. maximize
4. van
5. workout
6. irritable
7. horn
8. lag
9. warns
10. nutritious

Exercise 3

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. a
5. a
6. b
7. a
8. a
9. d
10. c

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F Alex has a nightmare that he **fell during the race.**
2. T
3. F Alex wanted to eat something **nutritious** for breakfast.
4. T
5. T
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. b
4. a

Answer Key

Unit 14

Exercise 1

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. c
5. b

Exercise 2

1. d
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. d

Exercise 3

1. lump / brick
2. uttering / reconciled
3. shutters / sparkled
4. stale / flushed
5. crumbled / dough
6. sift / shattered
7. fist / flexible
8. mixture / sprinkle
9. expressed / slight
10. ruined / injured

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. T
3. F The **dough** needed to be **soft** and **flexible**.
4. F The **younger** brother uttered a sigh.
5. T
6. F A **slight** mistake **now became** a **major** problem.

Part B

1. b
2. b
3. b
4. d

Unit 15

Exercise 1

1. await / research
2. beloved / misery
3. variety / complained
4. confused / due
5. establish / climate
6. Although / prior
7. furnace / entire
8. midst / mature
9. leash / measured
10. apply / buried

Exercise 2

Part A

1. a
2. d
3. f
4. c
5. i
6. b
7. j
8. h
9. e
10. g

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. e
4. j

5. h
6. i
7. c
8. f
9. d
10. g

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F Wires were applied to Laika's **skin** so that scientists could **know how she felt**.
3. F Although Laika could not be buried, a **memorial** was established in her honor.
4. T
5. F In a prior launch scientists sent **a man-made object** into space.
6. T

Part B

1. a
2. a
3. c
4. a

Answer Key

Unit 16

Exercise 1

1. misfortune, negative
2. bruise, altogether
3. sake, per
4. pleaded, disobedient
5. source, glimpsed
6. hoop, stitched
7. bound, custom
8. stern, ripped
9. thump, scraped
10. foresee, vehement

Exercise 2

Part A

1. i
2. c
3. f
4. b
5. h
6. j
7. a
8. e
9. d
10. g

Part B

1. d
2. i
3. h
4. j

5. g
6. c
7. b
8. f
9. a
10. e

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. T
3. F There were **six** girls per team.
4. T
5. F Stephanie asked Gwen to try her best for the sake of the team.
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. d
3. b
4. b

Unit 17**Exercise 1**

1. lid / convenient
2. folded / shield
3. urban / exit
4. mighty / civilization
5. swayed / stormy
6. waded / reeds
7. flock / dew
8. poison / drastic
9. den / mushrooms
10. native / loomed

Exercise 2

1. poison
2. mushrooms
3. dew
4. native
5. shield
6. den
7. folded
8. flock
9. lid
10. exit

Exercise 3

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. b
5. d

Reading Comprehension**Part A**

1. F Tracy invites Kara to go camping with her family.
2. T
3. T
4. T
5. F The weather is sunny on the second day.
6. T

Part B

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. d

Answer Key

Unit 18

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. c
5. d

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. d
4. b
5. b

Exercise 2

Part A

1. e
2. j
3. d
4. a
5. g
6. b
7. c
8. h
9. i
10. f

Part B

1. i
2. b
3. e
4. g
5. a
6. f
7. c
8. j
9. d
10. h

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F The title of the script was *The Lost Glove*.
2. T
3. F Peter declined Robby's offer to practice together.
4. T
5. T
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. b
3. c
4. b

Unit 19

Exercise 1

1. b
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. a

Exercise 2

1. atmosphere
2. stated
3. chapters
4. notified
5. tray
6. afflicted
7. etc.
8. aisle
9. breakdown
10. author

Exercise 3

Part A

1. f
2. c
3. g
4. i
5. d
6. e
7. b
8. j
9. a

10. h

Part B

1. e
2. g
3. c
4. h
5. j
6. b
7. d
8. i
9. a
10. f

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F Isaac **listened to music** and read a book by his favorite author.
3. T
4. F Isaac was still scared after the shaking stopped.
5. F The pilot stated that the conditions in the atmosphere were **bad**.
6. T

Part B

7. b
8. d
9. a
10. c

Answer Key

Unit 20

Exercise 1

1. a
2. a
3. d
4. b
5. b

Exercise 2

1. sole
2. pray
3. choked
4. ceased
5. mass
6. dent
7. distrust
8. rife
9. betrayed
10. cross

Exercise 3

1. blast / choke
2. fort / treachery
3. sweep / tuck
4. sole / lining
5. distrust / betray
6. founded / ceased
7. commented / civil
8. bracelet / dent
9. mass / cross
10. rife / pray

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F The land near the King's fort was rife with **enemies**.
2. F When Clara and Susie met, **Susie** was sweeping the path.
3. T
4. T
5. F Clara commented to her father that he **shouldn't** distrust people.
6. T

Part B

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. b

Unit 21

Exercise 1

1. sum
2. vein
3. relate
4. chronicles
5. copper
6. millennium
7. background
8. venom
9. trustworthy
10. update

Exercise 2

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. a
5. a

Exercise 3

Part A

1. f
2. i
3. j
4. e
5. b
6. a
7. h
8. c
9. d

10. g

Part B

1. e
2. d
3. b
4. f
5. i
6. a
7. h
8. c
9. j
10. g

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F A teller at a bank thought her fellow employees were **stealing**.
2. T
3. F The venom was taken from a poisonous **snake**.
4. T
5. F **Three** of her coworkers were scratching their hands and arms.
6. T

Part B

1. d
2. b
3. c
4. d

Unit 22

Exercise 1

1. mocking, temper
2. scribes, unity
3. hitchhiked, cozy
4. charity, goods
5. heeded, neutral
6. empire, commerce
7. victor, throne
8. reduced, pity
9. persecuted, economy
10. depleted, condemned

Exercise 2

1. goods
2. depleted
3. charity
4. persecuted
5. victors
6. hitchhiked
7. mock
8. reduced
9. unity
10. empire

Exercise 3

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. a
5. c

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F The **trees** were important to the western areas' economy.
3. T
4. F The **emperor** sat upon his throne, and the **scribe** stood in front of him.
5. F The emperor condemned the citizens of the western areas to **starve**.
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. d
4. a

Unit 23

Exercise 1

1. b
2. d
3. a
4. a
5. d
6. c
7. d
8. d
9. c
10. a

Exercise 2

Part A

1. g
2. d
3. f
4. h
5. j
6. e
7. b
8. i
9. a
10. c

Part B

1. b
2. e
3. j
4. f

5. c
6. i
7. d
8. g
9. a
10. h

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F A **tiny insect** may have been the biggest factor in the death of these **huge creatures**.
3. T
4. F A vast majority of **dinosaurs**, from the vegetarians to the meat eaters, died.
5. F In addition, scientists have found the genetic material of **mosquitoes** in fossils.
6. T

Part B

1. d
2. a
3. b
4. a

Answer Key

Unit 24

Exercise 1

Part A

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. d
5. d

Part B

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. d
5. a

Exercise 2

1. cherish / moderation
2. growl / predator
3. sane / compassion
4. snatch / saucer
5. core / foster
6. cunning / grind
7. tumbled / dizzy
8. withhold / consent
9. tense / stumble
10. equilibrium / stagger

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T
2. F The **innkeeper** staggered outside.
3. T
4. T
5. F He **did not** want to withhold the truth any longer. He just wanted to foster **happiness**.
6. T

Part B

1. d
2. b
3. d
4. a

Unit 25

Exercise 1

Part A

1. c
2. a
3. d
4. c
5. d

Part B

1. c
2. c
3. b
4. b
5. b

Exercise 2

1. b
2. b
3. b
4. b
5. d

Exercise 3

1. hardy / traverse
2. celebrity / institute
3. migrate / aircraft
4. jealousy / esteemed
5. extinct / swamp
6. species / secluded
7. decisive / ethical

8. zoology / nurture
9. rural / overhead
10. principle / concrete

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F The journey on the aircraft to Australia took **twenty** hours.
2. F **Gilbert** was a professor of zoology.
3. F **Gilbert** was hardier than **Eliza**.
4. T
5. T
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. a

Answer Key

Unit 26

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b
2. b
3. c
4. a
5. b

Part B

1. c
2. d
3. c
4. b
5. a

Exercise 2

Part A

1. e
2. h
3. i
4. a
5. j
6. c
7. f
8. g
9. d
10. b

Part B

1. h

2. g

3. d

4. e

5. c

6. f

7. i

8. b

9. j

10. a

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T

2. F It was **impossible** for the colonel to extinguish the fire on the plane.

3. F The plane did not have any gasoline left after the crash.

4. T

5. F The couple searched for help in the forest for **three** days.

6. F The forest people led Wilbur and Mary through the trees and they promptly arrived at a **small town**.

Part B

1. a

2. a

3. c

4. b

Unit 27

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. c
5. b

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. a

Exercise 2

1. wooded
2. distributed
3. federal
4. objective
5. exotic
6. oxygen
7. comprehensive
8. equator
9. comparative
10. beneficial

Exercise 3

1. d
2. a

3. b
4. d
5. a

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F **Rainforests** provide much of the world's oxygen supply.
2. T
3. T
4. F These humid, wooded mountaintops are mainly in African and **Central and South American** countries.
5. T
6. T

Part B

1. a
2. a
3. c
4. d

Answer Key

Unit 28

Exercise 1

Part A

1. d
2. d
3. a
4. a
5. c

Part B

1. c
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. d

Exercise 2

1. riot / shrine
2. paraphrased / defined
3. presently / expand
4. avail / solitude
5. fundamental / worsen
6. scribble / linger
7. horrifying / dreaded
8. incredulous / stark
9. summon / organism
10. random / plague

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F In 430 BCE, a horrifying plague **broke out** in Athens.
2. T
3. T
4. F Thucydides was incredulous that the plague was caused **by the gods**.
5. T
6. T

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. d
4. b

Answer Key

Unit 30

Exercise 1

1. a
2. a
3. d
4. b
5. d
6. d
7. a
8. c
9. b
10. d

Exercise 2

Part A

1. i
2. d
3. b
4. j
5. g
6. e
7. f
8. a
9. c
10. h

Part B

1. j
2. h
3. e
4. a

5. f
6. b
7. i
8. c
9. g
10. d

Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F **Martin** was a farmer who grew organic ginseng and poultry.
2. T
3. T
4. F **Tom's** stance on discipline was too strong.
5. T
6. F The brothers could **not** see the land's boundary.

Part B

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. d